

INTRODUCTION	2
IMPORTANT INFORMATION	3
RULES & INFORMATION	4
CONTACTS FOR SERVICE PERSONNEL	11
WARRANTY CARD	12
AIR CONDITIONER	15
OVEN	61
COOK TOP	97
RANGE HOOD	121
DISHWASHER	127
DRYER	159
WASHING MACHINE	173
INTERCOM	199

3/57 Eyre St Kingston ACT 2604

www.milin.com.au

P
F
ACN

02 6260 3338
02 6260 3373
145 495 067

INTRODUCTION

Congratulations and thank you for your decision to purchase at Lakefront – 11 Trevillian Quay, Kingston ACT.

This Home Owner's manual has been designed to provide you with useful information about your new home. It's a guide to moving in, establishing your service accounts and caring for your property.

In addition to this, it includes essential details in relation to manufactures instructions, operating manuals and warranty information.

This guide aims to assist in the preservation and longevity of the finishes and fixtures within your home.

From time to time you may be required to enlist the assistance of a tradesperson to come to your home. If this is the case, it's important that you only deal with a fully qualified professional and as such, we have compiled a list of preferred contractors and suppliers for you.

Please take the time to read through the information provided and we thank you again for choosing to purchase your next home from Milin Builders.

**Sincerely,
Milin Builders**

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

PLEASE RETAIN THIS MANUAL IN A SAFE PLACE FOR FUTURE USE AND REFERENCE.

Information contained within this manual is copyright to Milin Builders Pty Ltd and their respective authors and/or suppliers 2012

Dear Owner,

For your safety and trouble free operation of your new appliances, please read the following manuals carefully and observe all of the manufacturers **“Warning”**, **“Caution”**, **“Danger”**, **“Note”** and **“Do & Do Not”** points within the individual manuals.

Maintenance and/or repairs of the appliances **must** be carried out by a **licensed** and approved installer or supplier, (information of which is supplied within this manual under **“Contacts for Service Personnel”**). Failure to observe the above points may lead to warranty cancellation, as well as the risk of **electric shock or fatal injury**.

Before calling for assistance, please read the **“Trouble Shooting”** or **“Problem Solving”** section within your manual. Also note the following points:

- All hot water units, irrespective of their make and design, are factory pre set per relevant plumbing regulations and/or legislation to a maximum temperature of 48 degrees Celsius. This is to prevent scalding and as such, the water temperature is not ‘User Adjustable’. Interfering with or readjusting the thermostat on the hot water unit is strictly forbidden as per regulations. All maintenance and repairs to hot water units are to be carried out strictly by a **licensed** plumber.

All information contained within this manual is in good faith; utilising information supplied by the installers or suppliers of the relevant appliances and was correct at the time of printing.

RULES & INFORMATION

The following rules and recommendations are related to the new development 'Lakefront', located at 11 Trevillian Quay, Kingston ACT and must be followed in order to satisfy Fire Brigade, Australian Building Standards and Warranty regulations.

Fire Safety Requirements

Owners, tenants and future owners are required to abide by the following:

- **Interfering with any fire door (sole occupancy units, fire stair and hallways) is strictly forbidden as per ACT Fire and Rescue. This particularly includes propping open fire doors so that they stay open while residents are moving in and out. Doing so will damage the door hinge and render the fire door inoperable as well as reducing the integrity of the bounding construction, furthermore warranty on the door will be void.**
- Storing any materials in the fire stairwells is strictly forbidden as per notices inside the stair shafts titled "Offences Relating To Fire Stairs".
- Storing or placing any items in the Communications cupboard such as cleaning products and equipment, boxes etc is strictly forbidden.
- • The use of fire extinguishers and fire hose reels for any purpose other than fire fighting is strictly forbidden. This includes all extinguishes and fire hose reels in the car park. **Under no circumstances are fire hose reels to be used for washing vehicles or car park pavements.**
- Due to the sensitive nature of the smoke detection system installed within the development, smoking in the stairwells and corridors is strictly forbidden. ACT Fire and Rescue will charge the Body Corporate a call out fee for any false alarms induced by cigarette smoke as well as dense dust.
- Parking on the basement ramp is strictly forbidden.

Body Corporate Rules

- A notice is to be provided to all residents that describes the fire safety systems within the building, and their need for regular maintenance.
- A means of gaining access to the entry doors of all Single Occupancy Units (SOU) is to be stipulated so that regular maintenance can be provided to these fire doors.
- A notice is to be provided to all residents stating that **no** fly screens are permitted to be installed on SOU entry doors as this will result in the likely chocking open of the doors and a reduction in the integrity of the bounding construction.

The provisions listed in the above Section are to be strictly adhered to. The requirements listed in this section are *Essential Services* and as such, all fire safety systems should be identified as requiring maintenance and certification at appropriate intervals in order to comply with Australian Standards and Section E of the NCC (Formerly BCA).

The following items are not to be held in the storage areas as per notices on the associated cages:

- Any fresh or frozen food items including meat, fruit and vegetables.
- Corrosive liquids and solids such as acids, fertilizers etc.
- Explosive and combustible materials such as fireworks, flares etc.
- Flammable Liquids such as Fuel (diesel, petrol, thinners, oils, paints, gas bottles, etc.)
- Items that may become affected by moisture.
- Timber products that may attract termites and white ants such as cardboard, paper, timber furniture, boxes etc.

RULES & INFORMATION

It will become the Body Corporate's responsibility to engage a licensed professional to attend to, and carry out routine maintenance on the following items:

- Automatic Fire Alarm and detection Systems as per AS 1851 Part 8 1987.
- Fire doors and frames.
- Fire Extinguishers.
- Fire Hose Reels.
- Garage doors.
- Garbage rooms.
- Irrigation systems.
- Lifts.
- Hot water systems.
- Gym equipment.

It is also the Body Corporate's responsibility to engage a qualified professional to attend to the following items on a regular basis:

- To inspect and clean storm water pits and sumps, also to test and induce operation of the pump located within the sump.
- To inspect and clean the storm water grate located at the perimeter of lower basement.

Failure to observe the above items may result in damage to property and dwelling.

As per Building Authority regulations and relevant ACT legislation, the car park is ventilated by the means of mechanical ventilation; Adjustments can be made to the timers for purposes of day light savings etc. However failure to activate the ventilation system at all is dangerous for the wellbeing of occupants (carbon dioxide poisoning) as well as being against the law.

Access

Each homeowner will receive 2 main entry door keys, 1 car park access fob per car space, window keys, sliding door keys and a set of mail box keys. If you require duplicate keys to be cut please contact Independent Body Corporate on (02) 6209 1515.

In addition, your apartment is fitted with a Ferman loft colour video intercom with 4" TFT screen and hands free mode. Upon receiving a call, an image will appear automatically on the monitor. To communicate with the caller, press the middle button with a phone image above, this will allow 2 way communication with the visitor. For further information, please reference the full intercom user manual contained at the back of this folder.

Water Supply

Please note that this development has one common water meter located to the front of the complex on Trevillian Quay inside the main shut off valve pit. Shutting off the main valve will cut all domestic water supplies to the Lakefront development.

Inside the main shut off valve pit, you will also find the fire main shut off valve, which **Under No Circumstances** is to be interfered with. Closing off this valve by any person other than authorized Fire Brigade Officers is a criminal offence.

Within each unit, a Nefa High Performance Tempering Valve has been fitted. This controls the maximum hot water temperature available to your basin, shower and bathtub (where applicable). These Valves limit the hot water to 48 degrees Celsius as per the relevant regulations and legislation. This is to prevent scalding and as such, the water temperature is not 'User Adjustable'. Interfering with and/or readjusting the mixing valve is strictly forbidden as per regulations. The kitchen sink and laundry produce water at 65 degrees Celsius and caution should be taken to avoid scalding. All maintenance and repair requirements to mixing valve units is to be carried out by a **licensed** plumber.

RULES & INFORMATION

Shut Off Valves

Each unit comprises stop cocks for hot and cold water, a hot water meter, a tempering valve and pressure limiting valves. The location of these valves is in the bathroom ceiling behind the associated access panel. In addition, an isolation valve has been installed on the hot water units themselves for maintenance purposes.

Gas Supply

The gas supply to the development is metered by three gas meters and OPSO regulators which are located within the ground floor plant room. Meter One meters the gas consumption to the hot water plant. Meter Two meters the gas consumption of the pool heater located within the planter box closest to the pool and meter three meters the gas consumption to the apartments.

These meters / regulators must not, under any circumstances, be tampered with or switched off by a non qualified professional.

Electricity Supply

Electricity supply to the complex is individually metered. The main switchboard room is located on level 1 in the car park, adjacent the main roller door. Meter boxes for pod 1 and 4 are located within the level 4 corridor and the remaining meter boxes are located on level 1 in the car park. Access to these meter boxes is limited to authorised personnel only.

Additionally, each unit is provided with a Consumer Switch Board. Inside, you will find the main shut off switch, consumer fuses and RCD fuses. Should you experience a power out or your lights trip re-set the tripped RCD fuses. If problems persist, please call the electrician from the 'Contacts for Service Personnel' section located within this handbook. Meter boxes need to be accessible and should not be covered or obstructed. Any work associated with the electrical supply and distribution needs to be performed by a licensed electrician, along with any installation of hard wired appliances. The connection of this service to the dwelling is the

owner's responsibility and needs to be arranged through an appropriate supply company, we suggest, **ActewAGL 13 18 86** or visit **www.actewagl.com.au**. Please make sure all circuit breakers are in the 'off' position before connection takes place.

Communications Supply

This dwelling is provided with data and communications wiring (CAD5) to areas as specified in the inclusions list. The main distribution panel for each unit is located within the kitchen or in the bedroom.

Should you need any configuration work performed on the communications distribution, please contact the communications installer from the 'Contacts for Service Personnel' section located in this handbook. All work performed on the wiring needs to be done by a licensed telecommunications technician.

The connection of this service to the dwelling is the owner's responsibility and needs to be arranged through an appropriate supply company, we suggest **Telstra 13 22 00**.

Ventilation & Condensation

Canberra Winters are notoriously cold, often resulting in issues with condensation and mould build up within homes. Mould will grow in homes when it is provided with the right conditions to live. Common breeding grounds are where cold, dark and damp is constantly present or where the area is poorly ventilated and heating is inadequate.

If left untreated and allowed to grow, mould will spread rapidly. The key to alleviation is early detection and prevention.

Ways to prevent mould:

- Regularly wipe away and dry areas affected by condensation e.g. windows, sills and walls
- Ensure ventilation is adequate throughout

RULES & INFORMATION

the home, open windows and leave a small gap where possible

- Always use the laundry extraction fan when using the clothes dryer
- Clean the wet areas of the home regularly
- Ensure steam is extracted from the bathroom while showering or bathing by opening a window and using an exhaust fan
- Ensure steam is extracted when cooking by opening a window or using the exhaust fan
- Dispose of any wet, musty smelling items

Please refer to the ACT Government fact sheet on the www.dhcs.gov.au "Mould and Condensation – important information from Housing ACT."

Maintenance

Kitchen Cupboards

In order to prolong the life of your Duratech vinyl wrap doors, please observe the following recommendations from the manufacturer.

- Do not use abrasive cleaners E.g. Jif or Gumption when cleaning doors and panels. Day to day cleaning can be done with mild soapy water.
- If solvent based cleaners must be used; dab cleaner onto a cloth, wipe the surface and immediately remove any excess with a dry, clean cloth ensuring all cleaner has been removed.
- Use a soft cloth at all times, never an abrasive cloth or pad.
- Wipe off any spills immediately.
- Do not place heaters in close proximity to doors, as this can cause damage.
- Avoid placing kettles/toasters etc under any doors or panels, as constant excessive heat from these appliances may cause damage.

Stone

Stone is a high quality, solid, non porous surface product that is resistant to scratches, heat and stains however, it is not heat, stain and scratch *proof*.

In order to prolong the life of your stone bench top, please observe the following recommendations from the manufacturer.

- For everyday, routine cleaning, it is recommended that the surface be wiped with warm soapy water and a damp cloth or alternatively, a spray and wipe type cleaner.
- If a liquid or substance spills on the surface, immediately wipe the area with any commonly available multi-purpose cleaner or household detergent, followed by ordinary water. For more stubborn spills and stains, repeat the procedure several times and use a household scouring pad to remove the stain.
- Stone is designed and manufactured to withstand moderate heat however, the product is not heat proof. To prevent thermal shock, discolouration or other damages, it is necessary to use insulating pads when putting hot objects aside and not to expose the surface to open flames and prolonged contact with very hot pots. It is recommended to use a hot pad or trivet, especially when using cooking units such as electric frying pans, crock pots, or roaster ovens.
- To avoid scratches and damage, it is recommended that an appropriate cutting board is used at all times. Care should also be exercised when moving heavy objects and avoid dropping heavy kitchen tools upon the surface.
- Stone can be permanently damaged by prolonged exposure to strong chemicals and solvents. It is advisable not to use hydro fluorid acid, paint stripper, any products containing trichlorethane or, methylene chloride.

RULES & INFORMATION

Glass

In order to prolong the life of your Viridian SolTech™ glass windows, please observe the following recommendations from the manufacturer.

These windows have a very thin coating on the interior glass surface. It is this hard and durable coating which provides the product with improved thermal insulation and solar control performance compared to ordinary clear glass. The coated surface does clean differently to ordinary glass and these guidelines are recommended for the most appropriate hand cleaning results.

Routine Cleaning

Hand cleaning of the coated (interior) surface, to visibly remove accumulated dust or fingerprints, can be accomplished using a number of different glass cleaning products.

The exterior surface of the glass is not coated so can be cleaned in the same fashion as ordinary glass. Recommended cleaning products include Windex® Multi-Surface Cleaner or a mixture of one part vinegar to ten parts water.

In addition to the above products, commercially available vinegar-based glass cleaners have generally demonstrated an ability to provide a clean, streak free glass surface. Viridian does not recommend the use of ammonia-base and alcohol-base glass cleaners because these products tend to leave visible streaks.

- While cleaning ensure jewellery and watches are removed and gloves should be worn.
- Flood the glass surface with the spray-on cleaning solution or with a cloth saturated with the cleaning solution. Be generous with the amount of solution applied.
- Scrub the wetted surface with a clean, lint free towel or cloth.
- Wipe dry with a dry, clean, lint free towel or cloth. Do not use a squeegee on the coated (interior) surface.

- To prevent streaking, stop wiping when the glass is almost dry and there is a uniform film of moisture left on the glass surface. The film will quickly evaporate leaving a clean surface.

Do not use razor blades, steel wool, scouring bristles or other metallic or abrasive objects on the coated surface. If metallic objects contact the coated surface, a thin layer of metal removed from the object may be deposited onto the surface which results in a discoloured stain that is difficult to remove using normal cleaning procedures.

Frameless Shower Screens

In order to prolong the life of your frameless, toughened glass shower screen, please observe the following recommendations from the manufacturer.

- Glass should be cleaned at least weekly to remove soap stains, which if left uncleaned can damage the surface of the glass. A plastic squeegee is useful in this instance.
- Hinge and clamp fittings should be checked at least once every six months to ensure that screws have not become loose, and to ensure that the hinges are operating smoothly.
- A couple of drops of sewing machine oil should be applied to the pivot pin on the metal hinge every six months
- Regular checks that there is adequate clearance between all glass edges is recommended.

Carpets

In order to prolong the life of your Godfrey Hirst 100% wool broadloom carpet, please observe the following recommendations from the manufacturer.

Vacuum Cleaning

All areas shall be vacuumed with an upright suction cleaner with a pile beater at a minimum of once per week. The Pile Beater may consist of revolving bristle strips or a beater bar/bristle strip combination. It is recommended that the vacuum cleaner have

RULES & INFORMATION

an adjustable height beater. The height should be checked and adjusted each time the cleaner is used, to ensure that the carpet pile is not damaged by beating that is more vigorous than is necessary.

Several passes must be made over each area to ensure efficient removal of soiling material.

Spot Cleaning

Spillages, spots and stains shall be removed as soon as possible after they have occurred.

Highly alkaline spot cleaning chemicals should be avoided. However, if necessary to remove difficult stains, the spot must be neutralized after cleaning by applying dilute acid - for example white vinegar - before the spot is allowed to dry out.

Periodic Deep Cleaning

Periodic cleaning is to be carried out annually using the hot water injection and extraction method ('steam cleaning') with a smooth wand attachment. Hot water injection solution shall be maximum of 50C in the solution tank. It is necessary to ensure that the solution application is uniform, that it is the minimum required to clean the carpet and that it is left for the minimum time possible on the carpet before being extracted. It is also necessary to extract the solution evenly and thoroughly to be sure that after cleaning, the moisture content of the pile is even throughout and as low as possible to assist the drying process.

An adequate flow of drying air must be provided to allow the carpet to dry out in a reasonable time. Because each floor of modern buildings are effectively sealed, the air conditioning system should be run at a temperature of 20C to 25C while the carpet is being cleaned and then for a further 24 hours after completion of cleaning.

Get TransACT's high-speed broadband on a month-to-month plan



Great news - your apartment has been connected to TransACT's high-speed VDSL2 network

Our VDSL2 service allows you to share your connection with even more devices and experience faster browsing speeds than our standard VDSL network.

Sign up today and enjoy the flexibility of a month-to-month plan, exclusive to your complex.

\$80 per month
Home phone and
100GB
50GB peak + 50GB off peak!
\$0.0001 per MB

Month-to-month plan

Min cost including \$79.95 connection fee and \$20 Gaspriser set up fee is \$179.95.

**Don't wait.
Call TransACT on 13 30 61**

TransACT
an inet company

Standard Form of Agreement and Gaspriser terms and conditions apply. All prices are GST inclusive. Month to month plan only available in selected MDAs. Professional install is \$150. Call 13 30 61 for details. Services are only available on TransACT's own network. TransACT and Gaspriser services are billed separately. Download speeds may be affected by a number of factors outside TransACT's control including the customer's hardware and software, the number of devices in the customer's premises using the internet simultaneously, the type and source of the internet traffic being accessed and limited bandwidth at the content source or between the content source and the customer. A TransACT service with a higher theoretical speed may not result in increased download speeds for all internet traffic. If TransACT's broadband ports to speed with an ISP other than Gaspriser, the performance of the customer's internet access is entirely dependent on the ISP used and is outside TransACT's control. Peak times are from 9am-2am. Off peak times are from 2am-9am. If you reach your monthly download quota for peak or off-peak data, that data type's speed will be slowed to 128Kbps for the remainder of the download measurement period. TransACT Capital Communications Pty Ltd ABN 23 950 966 888. TransACT Capital Communications Pty Ltd trading as Gaspriser. Ventures.

RULES & INFORMATION

Products & Finishes

These tables outline the internal finishes of your apartment depending on the original colour scheme you selected and will be useful if you ever need to undertake maintenance or touch up repairs.

Scheme 1

Material	Area	Colour	Specification	Supplier
Carpet	Living area & bedrooms	Taupe	Godfrey Hirst 100% wool, broadloom carpet	Lemon's Carpets
Floor & Wall Tile	Kitchen, bathrooms, laundry & entry	Pietra grey	Polished marble tile	WK Marble
Bench Top	Kitchen & laundry	Alpine White	30mm Quartz stone	Laminex
Splashback	Kitchen	Mirror Finish	Toughened, annealed & starphired colourback glass	Rivoland
Feature Laminate	Kitchen	White	Timber grain	Rivoland
Highlight Laminate	Kitchen	Mirror Finish	Mirror Finish	Rivoland
Joinery	Kitchen & Bathroom	Fossil Gloss	Vinyl wrap	Rivoland
Robe Internal	Bedroom	Metro Wood	Velour finish timber laminate	Dulux

Scheme 2

Material	Area	Colour	Specification	Supplier
Carpet	Living area & bedrooms	Rustic	Godfrey Hirst 100% wool, broadloom carpet	Lemon's Carpets
Floor & Wall Tile	Kitchen, bathrooms, laundry & entry	Arabescato	Polished marble tile	WK Marble
Bench Top	Kitchen & laundry	Turino	30mm Quartz stone	Laminex
Splashback	Kitchen	Stipple Seal	Toughened, annealed & starphired colourback glass	Rivoland
Feature Laminate	Kitchen	Timber grain	White timber grain	Rivoland
Highlight Laminate	Kitchen	Brushed metal	Brushed metal finish	Rivoland
Joinery	Kitchen & Bathroom	Stipple Seal	Vinyl wrap	Rivoland
Robe Internal	Bedroom	Idyllic	Velour finish timber laminate	Dulux

Scheme 3

Material	Area	Colour	Specification	Supplier
Carpet	Living area & bedrooms	Storm	Godfrey Hirst 100% wool, broadloom carpet	Lemon's Carpets
Floor & Wall Tile	Kitchen, bathrooms, laundry & entry	Arabescato bianco composite	Marble composite tile, honed	WK Marble
Bench Top	Kitchen & laundry	Ice	30mm Quartz stone	Laminex
Splashback	Kitchen	Dulux Periwinkle	Toughened, annealed & starphired colourback glass	Rivoland
Feature Laminate	Kitchen	Grey	Microline	Rivoland
Highlight Laminate	Kitchen	Mirror finish	Mirror finish	Rivoland
Joinery	Kitchen & Bathroom	Galaxy pearl	Vinyl wrap	Rivoland
Robe Internal	Bedroom	Oyster linea 289	Natural finish	Dulux

CONTACTS FOR SERVICE PERSONNEL

Service	Company	Contact	Phone
Dishwasher	Miele	Customer Care	1300 464 353
Air Conditioning	Cold Front Airconditioning	Roberto Valenzuela	0419 441 345
Electrician	All Star Electrical	Joe Tominac	0418 624 632
Plumber	Custom Plumbing	Customer Care	(02) 62806560
TV, Phone & CAD5 (Internet)	All Star Electrical	Joe Tominac	0418 624 632
Landscaping	Surround-scapes	Alan Butler	0407 170 073
Irrigation	Surround-scapes	Alan Butler	0407 170 073
Keys	Keeler Hardware	Matt Ridley	02 6280 7176
Door Access Swipes	All Star Electrical	Joe Tominac	0418 624 632
Windows	System Windows	Graeme Gardiner	0408 486 392

Dear Valued Client,

Understanding that customer client communication is the most important part of our relationship, we have created a dedicated customer service team to support you throughout this period. Our experienced, skilled and customer focused team members have all the resources to assist and resolve issues that may arise throughout each stage.

Our customer service team members are committed to resolving problems quickly and with minimal fuss. We have our ongoing relationship foremost in mind when providing after sales services to you and your client.

Should there be any issues, concerning products that require action - our team will conduct a service call to the supplier on the same day as notified, and will request resolution within 2 working days. We will then follow up and deal directly with your customer until the issue is resolved to satisfaction. This will ensure that your valuable time is not taken up with service matters.

Our customer service team can be contacted directly on (02) 6202 2000 or alternately via email at HNECT.CustomerService@au.harveynorman.com

Please be prepared to quote the product code and invoice number of your item from the table below.

Yours sincerely,

Bradley Aberdeen
Customer Service Representative
Harvey Norman Commercial Division

Harvey Norman

COMMERCIAL DIVISION

LAKEFRONT DEVELOPMENT
2/62 KINGSTON
KINGSTON ISLAND

Product Code	Item Description	Supplier	Warranty	Invoice No.
OR521UXB	52cm Concealed Canopy Rangehood	OMEGA	2 years	IN270866212
EVBU	Orion 410mm Sgl Bowl Undermount Sink NTH SS	CLARK	Clark Lifetime™ / 1 years	IN270797426
EMDUL	Orion 623mm 1&1/2 Bowl Undermount Sink	CLARK	Clark Lifetime™ / 1 years	IN270866212
OR701UXB	70cm Concealed Canopy Rangehood	OMEGA	2 years	IN270866212
12840SS	4 bnr Built-in Signature SS Burners w window	BEEFEATER	1 year	IN270868161
AR730CHR	Argo Sink Mixer CP (4S)	PHOENIX	7 years	IN270849045
32598000	Feel Basin Mixer CP (5S)	GROHE LUX	15 years/1 year	IN270810282
57335XB	Feel Shr/Bath Mixer Trim Kit - Sml Sqr CP	GROHE LUX	15 years/1 year	IN270810282
53966B--A	Grohe Universal Bodies (Sml or Lrg Plate)	GROHE	15 years/1 year	IN270790602
28667B	Tempesta Classic H/Shower on Rail CP (3S)	GROHE	1 year	IN270790602
BSM40C--A	Blikk Sink Mixer - 40mm CP (4S)	LOOK	5/5/1 years	IN270810282
979	Ovo 640mm S/Rec Basin NTH WHT (32)	STUDIOBAGNO	1 year	IN270810282
Q001--A	Q BTW Bk/1 Uni Trap Suite w/- SCS WH (80-160)	STUDIOBAGNO	1 year	IN270810282
265551	Meno Sqr Toilet Roll Holder CP	ARGENT	5 years	IN270866390
265548	Meno Sqr Towel Rail - 600mm Double CP	ARGENT	5 years	IN270866390
265598	Meno Sqr 450mm Glass Shelf CP	ARGENT	5 years	IN270866390
265589	Meno Sqr Liquid Soap Dispenser CP	ARGENT	5 years	IN270866390
01310	EUROWA RECT. BATH	BATHE	2 years	IN270801036
53965B	Grohe Universal Divertor Bodies	GROHE	15 years/1 year	IN270790602
57337XB	Feel Shr/Bath Mixer w/- Div Trim Kit - Sml Rect CP	GROHE LUX	15 years/1 year	IN270810282
WL70T60CW2	7Kg Aquasmart 2 Low Profile Agitator 4 Star WELS	F&P	2 years	IN270821341
108400	Zen Bath Spout	ARGENT	15 years/1 year	IN270868901
DE40F56A1--A	4Kg Aerodry Front Vented Clothes Dryer	F&P	2 years	IN270815598
H48106 CLST	60CM 8 FUNCTION OVEN	MIELE	2 YEARS	IN270868156
KM2012G	65CM 4 BURNER WOK COOKTOP	MIELE	2 YEARS	IN270869246

Part 5

Operation Manual

1. Instruction.....	426
1.1 FTK(X)S20/25/35, CDK(X)S, FDXS, FLXS Series.....	426
1.2 FTK(X)S50/60/71J Series	475
1.3 FVXS25/35/50G Series	511
1.4 FFQ25/35/50/60B Series.....	541

1.1.2 Safety Precautions

Safety precautions

- Keep this manual where the operator can easily find them.
- Read this manual attentively before starting up the unit.
- For safety reason the operator must read the following cautions carefully.
- This manual classifies precautions into **WARNING** and **CAUTION**. Be sure to follow all precautions below; they are all important for ensuring safety.

WARNING

If you do not follow these instructions exactly, the unit may cause property damage, personal injury or loss of life.

CAUTION

If you do not follow these instructions exactly, the unit may cause minor or moderate property damage or personal injury.

- ⚠ **Never do.**
- ⚡ **Be sure to follow the instructions.**
- ⚡ **Be sure to earth the air conditioner.**
- ⚡ **Never touch the air conditioner (including the remote controller) with a wet hand.**
- ⚡ **Never cause the air conditioner (including the remote controller) to get wet.**

WARNING

- In order to avoid fire, explosion or injury, do not operate the unit when harmful, among which flammable or corrosive gases, are detected near the unit.
- It is not good for health to expose your body to the air flow for a long time.
- Do not put a finger, a rod or other objects into the air outlet or inlet. As the fan is rotating at a high speed, it will cause injury.
- Do not attempt to repair, relocate, modify or reinstall the air conditioner by yourself. Incorrect work will cause electric shocks, fire etc.
- For repairs and reinstallation, consult your Daikin dealer for advice and information.

- The refrigerant used in the air conditioner is safe. Although leaks should not occur, if for some reason any refrigerant happens to leak into the room, make sure it does not come in contact with any flame as of gas heaters, kerosene heaters or gas range.
- If the air conditioner is not cooling (heating) properly, the refrigerant may be leaking, so call your dealer.
- When carrying out repairs accompanying adding refrigerant, check the content of the repairs with our service staff.
- Do not attempt to install the air conditioner by yourself. Incorrect work will result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire. For installation, consult the dealer or a qualified technician.
- In order to avoid electric shock, fire or injury, if you detect any abnormally such as smell of fire, stop the operation and turn off the breaker. And call your dealer for instructions.

CAUTION

- The air conditioner must be earthed. Incomplete earthing may result in electric shocks. Do not connect the earth line to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod, or a telephone earth line.
- In order to avoid any quality deterioration, do not use the unit for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art.
- Never expose little children, plants or animals directly to the air flow.
- Do not place appliances which produce open fire in places exposed to the air flow from the unit or under the indoor unit. It may cause incomplete combustion or deformation of the unit due to the heat.
- Do not block air inlets nor outlets. Impaired air flow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.

1. Instruction

1.1 FTK(X)S20/25/35, CDK(X)S, FDXS, FLXS Series

1.1.1 Manual Contents and Reference Page

Model Series	Wall Mounted Type
	FTK(X)S20D FTK(X)S25/35G
Read Before Operation	
Safety Precautions	427
Names of Parts	429
Preparation before Operation ★1	441
Operation	
AUTO, DRY, COOL, HEAT, FAN Operation ★1	444
Adjusting the Airflow Direction	446
POWERFUL Operation ★1	450
OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET Operation ★1	451
ECONO Operation	452
MOLD PROOF Operation	453
HOME LEAVE Operation ★2	—
INTELLIGENT EYE Operation	456
TIMER Operation ★1	458
Note for Multi System	460
Care and Cleaning	
Care and Cleaning	462
Trouble Shooting	
Trouble Shooting	472
Drawing No.	3P194539-2 3P232468-7

Model Series	Duct Connected Type	Floor/Ceiling Suspended Duct Type
	CDK(X)S25/35/50/60C FDXS25/35/50/60C	FLXS25B FLXS55/60G
Read Before Operation		
Safety Precautions	427	427
Names of Parts	432	438
Preparation before Operation ★1	441	441
Operation		
AUTO, DRY, COOL, HEAT, FAN Operation ★1	444	444
Adjusting the Airflow Direction	—	448
POWERFUL Operation ★1	450	450
OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET Operation ★1	451	451
ECONO Operation	—	—
MOLD PROOF Operation	—	—
HOME LEAVE Operation ★2	454	454
INTELLIGENT EYE Operation	—	—
TIMER Operation ★1	458	458
Note for Multi System	460	460
Care and Cleaning		
Care and Cleaning	465	468
Trouble Shooting		
Trouble Shooting	472	472
Drawing No.	3P196326-5 3P196326-7	3P194537-7 3P232468-1

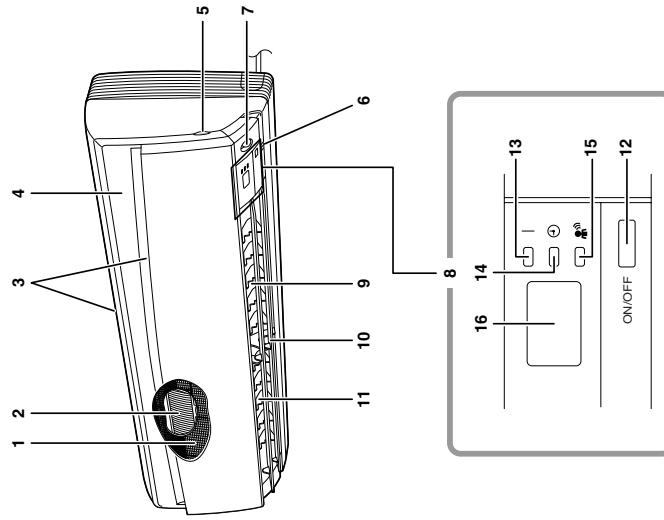
★1 : Illustrations are for wall mounted type FTK(X)S20D as representative.
★2 : Illustrations are for duct connected type as representative.

1.1.3 Names of Parts

FTK(X)S20D, FTK(X)S25/35G

Names of parts

■ Indoor Unit



5

- Do not stand or sit on the outdoor unit. Do not place any object on the unit to avoid injury, do not remove the fan guard.
- Do not place anything under the indoor or outdoor unit that must be kept away from moisture. In certain conditions, moisture in the air may condense and drip.
- After a long use, check the unit stand and fittings for damage.
- Do not touch the air inlet and aluminum fins of outdoor unit. It may cause injury.
- The appliance is not intended for use by young children or infirm persons without supervision.
- Young children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

- To avoid oxygen deficiency, ventilate the room sufficiently if equipment with burner is used together with the air conditioner.
- Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation, turn the breaker off or pull out the supply cord.
- Do not connect the air conditioner to a power supply different from the one as specified. It may cause trouble or fire.
- Depending on the environment, an earth leakage breaker must be installed. Lack of an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks.
- Arrange the drain hose to ensure smooth drainage. Incomplete draining may cause wetting of the building, furniture etc.
- Do not operate the air conditioner with wet hands.



- Do not wash the indoor unit with excessive water, only use a slightly wet cloth.
- Do not place things such as vessels containing water or anything else on top of the unit. Water may penetrate into the unit and degrade electrical insulations, resulting in an electric shock.

Installation site.

- To install the air conditioner in the following types of environments, consult the dealer.
 - Places with an oily ambient or where steam or soot occurs.
 - Salty environment such as coastal areas.
 - Places where sulfide gas occurs such as hot springs.
 - Places where snow may block the outdoor unit.

The drain from the outdoor unit must be discharged to a place of good drainage.

Consider nuisance to your neighbours from noises.

- For installation, choose a place as described below.
 - A place solid enough to bear the weight of the unit which does not amplify the operation noise or vibration.
 - A place from where the air discharged from the outdoor unit or the operation noise will not annoy your neighbours.

Electrical work.

- For power supply, be sure to use a separate power circuit dedicated to the air conditioner.

System relocation.

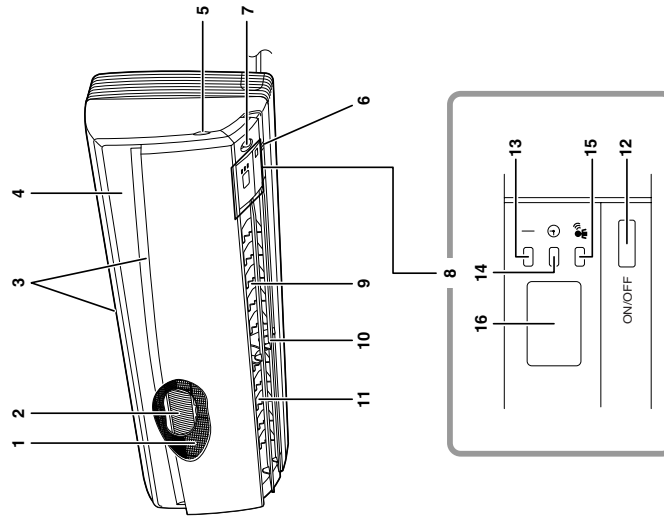
- Relocating the air conditioner requires specialized knowledge and skills. Please consult the dealer if relocation is necessary for moving or remodeling.

1.1.3 Names of Parts

FTK(X)S20D, FTK(X)S25/35G

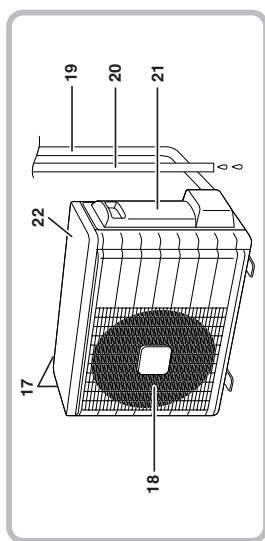
Names of parts

■ Indoor Unit



5

Outdoor Unit



Indoor Unit

1. Air filter
2. Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Air-Purifying Filter:
 - These filters are attached to the inside of the air filters.
3. Air inlet
4. Front panel
5. Panel tab
6. Room temperature sensor:
 - It senses the air temperature around the unit.
7. INTELLIGENT EYE sensor:
 - It detects the movements of people and automatically switches between normal operation and energy saving operation.
8. Display
9. Air outlet
10. Flaps (horizontal blades)
11. Louvers (vertical blades):
 - The louvers are inside of the air outlet.

Mode	Temperature setting	Air flow rate
FTK	COOL 22°C	AUTO
FTX	AUTO 25°C	AUTO

12. Indoor Unit ON/OFF switch:

- Push this switch once to start operation.
- Push once again to stop it.
- The operation mode refers to the following table.

- This switch is useful when the remote controller is missing.

13. Operation lamp (green)

- It receives signals from the remote controller.

14. TIMER lamp (yellow)

- When the unit receives a signal, you will hear a short beep.
- Operation startbeep-beep
- Settings changedbeep
- Operation stopbeeeeeeep

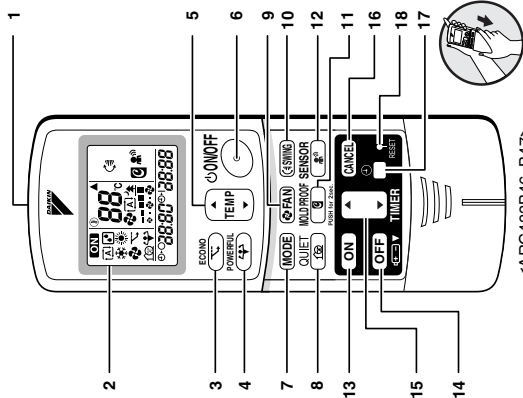
15. INTELLIGENT EYE lamp (green)

- It receives signals from the remote controller.
- When the unit receives a signal, you will hear a short beep.
- Operation startbeep-beep
- Settings changedbeep
- Operation stopbeeeeeeep

Outdoor Unit

17. Air inlet: (Back and side)
 - It is inside of this cover.
 18. Air outlet
 19. Refrigerant piping and inter-unit cable
 20. Drain hose
 21. Earth terminal:
 - It is inside of this cover.
 22. Outside air temperature sensor:
 - It senses the ambient temperature around the unit.
- Appearance of the outdoor unit may differ from some models.

Remote Controller



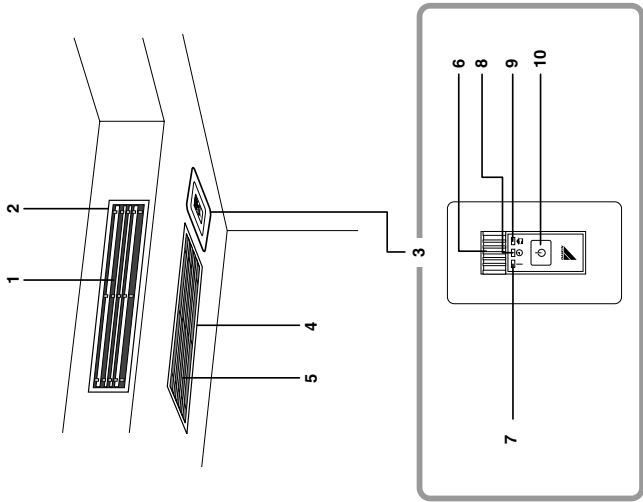
<A RC433B46, B47>

1. Signal transmitter:
 - It sends signals to the indoor unit.
2. Display:
 - It displays the current settings.
 - In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays ON for the purpose of explanation.)
3. ECONO button:
 - ECONO operation
4. POWERFUL button:
 - POWERFUL operation
5. TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons:
 - It changes the temperature setting.
6. ON/OFF button:
 - Press this button once to start operation.
 - Press once again to stop it.
7. MODE selector button:
 - It selects the operation mode. (AUTO/DRY/COOL/HEAT/FAN)
8. QUIET button: OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation
9. FAN setting button:
 - It selects the air flow rate setting.
10. SWING button
11. MOLD PROOF button:
 - MOLD PROOF operation
12. SENSOR button: INTELLIGENT EYE operation
13. ON TIMER button
14. OFF TIMER button:
 - It changes the time setting.
15. TIMER Setting button:
 - It changes the time setting.
16. TIMER CANCEL button:
 - It cancels the timer setting.
17. CLOCK button
18. RESET button:
 - Restart the unit if it freezes.
 - Use a thin object to push.

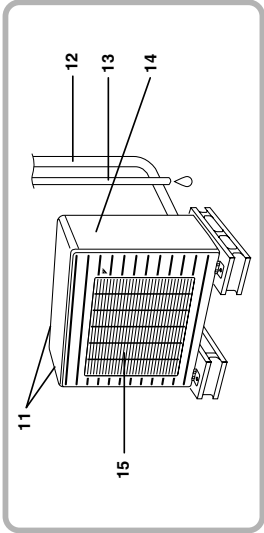
CDKS25/35/50/60C, FDXS25/35/50/60C

Names of parts

Indoor Unit



Outdoor Unit



Indoor Unit

1. Air outlet

2. Air outlet grille: (Field supply)

3. Display, Control panel

4. Suction grille: (Option)

5. Air inlet

6. Room temperature sensor:

7. Operation lamp (green)

8. TIMER lamp (yellow)

9. HOME LEAVE lamp (red):

10. Earth terminal:
- Appearance of the Air outlet grille and Air inlet grille may differ with some models.

• It senses the air temperature around the unit.

• Lights up when you use HOME LEAVE operation.

• Push this switch once to start operation. Push once again to stop it.

• This switch is useful when the remote controller is missing.

The operation mode refers to the following table.

Mode	Temperature setting	Air flow rate
CDKS C/F)DXS	COOL 22°C	AUTO
	AUTO 25°C	AUTO

Outdoor Unit

11. Air inlet: (Back and side)

12. Refrigerant piping and inter-unit cable

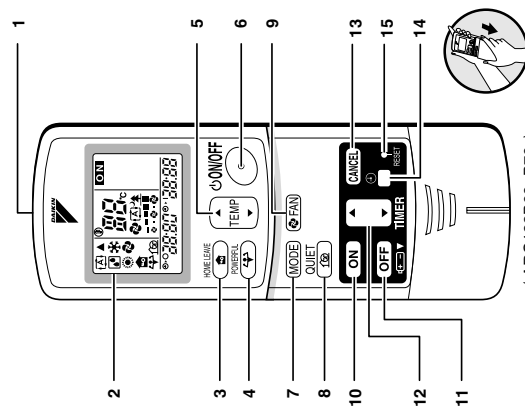
13. Drain hose

14. Earth terminal:

15. Air outlet
- It is inside of this cover.

Appearance of the outdoor unit may differ from some models.

■ Remote Controller



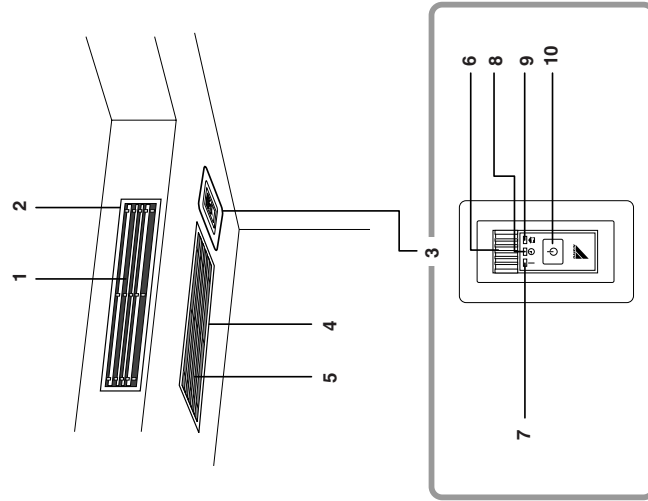
(ARC433B69, B76)

1. **Signal transmitter:**
 - It sends signals to the indoor unit.
2. **Display:**
 - It displays the current settings.
(In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays ON for the purpose of explanation.)
3. **HOME LEAVE button:**
 - HOME LEAVE operation
4. **POWERFUL button:**
 - POWERFUL operation
5. **TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons:**
 - It changes the temperature setting.
6. **ON/OFF button:**
 - Press this button once to start operation.
Press once again to stop it.
7. **MODE selector button:**
 - It selects the operation mode.
(AUTO/DRY/COOL/HEAT/FAN)
8. **QUIET button:**
 - QUIET operation
9. **FAN setting button:**
 - It selects the air flow rate setting.
10. **ON TIMER button**
11. **OFF TIMER button**
 - It changes the time setting.
12. **TIMER Setting button:**
 - It changes the time setting.
13. **TIMER CANCEL button:**
 - It cancels the timer setting.
14. **CLOCK button**
15. **RESET button:**
 - Restart the unit if it freezes.
• Use a thin object to push.

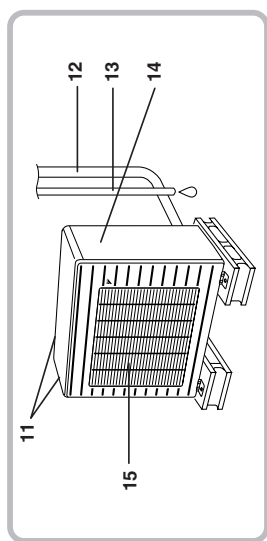
CDK(X)S25/35EA

Names of parts

■ Indoor Unit



Outdoor Unit



Indoor Unit

1. **Air outlet**
2. **Air outlet grille:** (Field supply)
 - Appearance of the Air outlet grille and Air inlet grille may differ with some models.
3. **Display, Control panel**
4. **Suction grille:** (Option)
 - Appearance of the suction grille and Air inlet grille may differ with some models.

5. **Air inlet**

• The operation mode refers to the following table.

Mode	Temperature setting	Air flow rate
CDKS	COOL	22°C
CDXS	AUTO	25°C
		AUTO

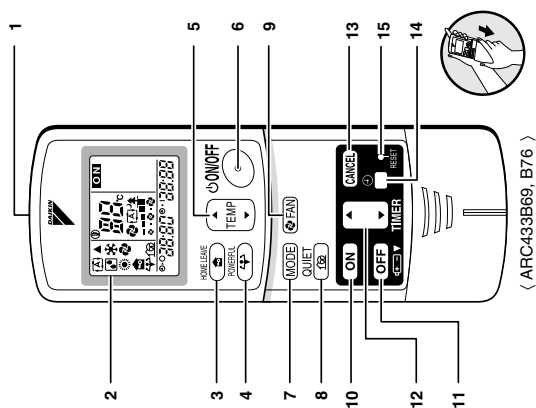
6. **Room temperature sensor:**
 - It senses the air temperature around the unit.
7. **Operation lamp (green)**
8. **TIMER lamp (yellow)**
9. **HOME LEAVE lamp (red):**
 - Lights up when you use HOME LEAVE operation.

Outdoor Unit

11. **Air inlet:** (Back and side)
12. **Refrigerant piping and inter-unit cable**
13. **Drain hose**
14. **Earth terminal:**
 - It is inside of this cover.
15. **Air outlet**

Appearance of the outdoor unit may differ from some models.

Remote Controller



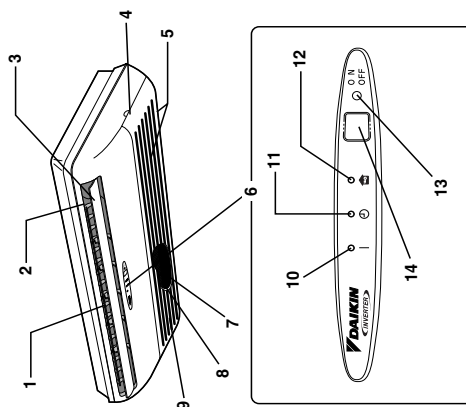
- (ARC433B69, B76)
1. **Signal transmitter:**
 - It sends signals to the indoor unit.
 2. **Display:**
 - It displays the current settings.
 - In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays ON for the purpose of explanation.)
 3. **HOME LEAVE button:**
 - HOME LEAVE operation
 4. **POWERFUL button:**
 - POWERFUL operation
 5. **TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons:**
 - It changes the temperature setting.
 6. **ON/OFF button:**
 - Press this button once to start operation.
 - Press once again to stop it.
 7. **MODE selector button:**
 - It selects the operation mode. (AUTO/DRY/COOL/HEAT/FAN)
 8. **QUIET button:**
 - QUIET operation
 9. **FAN setting button:**
 - It selects the air flow rate setting.
 10. **ON TIMER button**
 11. **OFF TIMER button**
 - It changes the time setting.
 12. **TIMER Setting button:**
 - It changes the timer setting.
 13. **TIMER CANCEL button:**
 - It cancels the timer setting.
 14. **CLOCK button**
 15. **RESET button:**
 - Restart the unit if it freezes.
 - Use a thin object to push.

FLXS25B, FLXS35/50/60G

Names of parts

Indoor Unit

The indoor unit can be installed either to the ceiling or to a wall. The descriptions contained in this manual show the case when installation is being carried out to the ceiling. (The methods of operation used are the same when installing to a wall.)



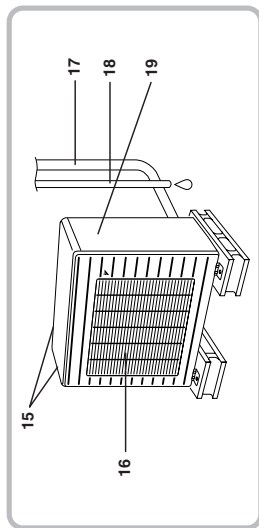
Opening the front grille

How to open the front grille :

CAUTION

- Before opening the front grille, be sure to stop the operation and turn the breaker OFF.

Outdoor Unit



Indoor Unit

1. Louvers (vertical blades):

- The louvers are inside of the air outlet.

2. Air outlet

3. Flap (horizontal blade)

4. Grille tab

5. Air inlet

6. Display

7. Air filter

8. Photocatalytic deodorizing filter or Air purifying filter:

- These filters are attached to the inside of the air filters.

9. Front grille

10. Operation lamp (green)

11. TIMER lamp (yellow)

12. HOME LEAVE lamp (red):

Lights up when you use HOME LEAVE Operation.

13. Indoor unit ON/OFF switch:

- Push this switch once to start operation.
- Push once again to stop it.
- The operation mode refers to the following table.

Mode	Temperature setting	Air flow rate
AUTO	25°C	AUTO

- Push the switch, using an object with a sharp tip, such as a pen.
- This switch is useful when the remote controller is missing.

14. Signal receiver:

- It receives signals from the remote controller.
- When the unit receives a signal, you will hear a short beep.
- Operation startbeep-beep
- Settings changedbeep
- Operation stopbeeeep

Outdoor Unit

15. Air inlet: (Back and side)

16. Air outlet

17. Refrigerant piping and inter-unit cable

18. Drain hose

19. Earth terminal:

- It is inside of this cover.

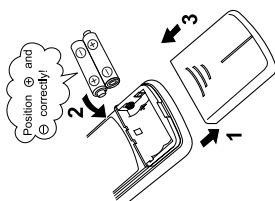
Appearance of the outdoor unit may differ from some models.

1.1.4 Preparation Before Operation

Preparation Before Operation

To set the batteries

1. Slide the front cover to take it off.
2. Set two dry batteries (AAA).
3. Set the front cover as before.

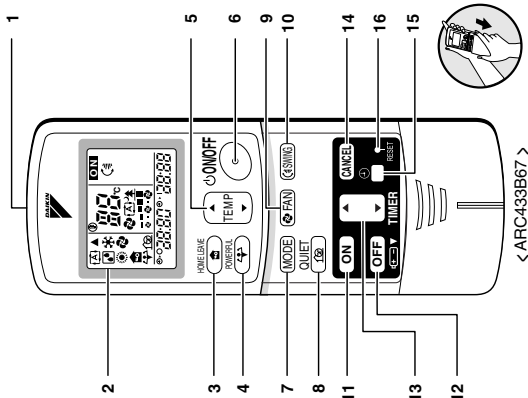


5

ATTENTION

- **About batteries**
 - When replacing the batteries, use batteries of the same type, and replace the two old batteries together.
 - When the system is not used for a long time, take the batteries out.
 - We recommend replacing once a year, although if the remote controller display begins to fade or if reception deteriorates, please replace with new alkaline batteries. Do not use manganese batteries.
 - The attached batteries are provided for the initial use of the system.
- The usable period of the batteries may be short depending on the manufactured date of the air conditioner.

Remote Controller

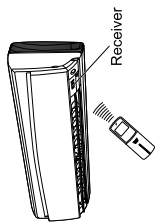


1. **Signal transmitter:**
 - It sends signals to the indoor unit.
2. **Display:**
 - It displays the current settings.
 - (In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays ON for the purpose of explanation.)
3. **HOME LEAVE button:**
 - It is used for HOME LEAVE operation.
4. **POWERFUL button:**
 - It is used for POWERFUL operation.
5. **TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons:**
 - It changes the temperature setting.
6. **ON/OFF button:**
 - Press this button once to start operation.
 - Press once again to stop it.
7. **MODE selector button:**
 - It selects the operation mode, (AUTO/DRY/COOL/HEAT/FAN)
8. **QUIET button:**
 - It selects the air flow rate setting.
9. **FAN setting button:**
 - It selects the air flow rate setting.
10. **SWING button:**
 - It selects the air flow rate setting.
11. **ON TIMER button:**
 - It sets the timer.
12. **OFF TIMER button:**
 - It sets the timer.
13. **TIMER Setting button:**
 - It changes the time setting.
14. **TIMER CANCEL button:**
 - It cancels the timer setting.
15. **CLOCK button:**
 - It sets the clock.
16. **RESET button:**
 - Restart the unit if it freezes.
 - Use a thin object to push.

Preparation Before Operation

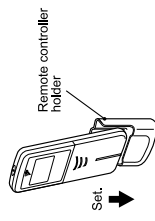
■ To operate the remote controller

- To use the remote controller, aim the transmitter at the indoor unit. If there is anything to block signals between the unit and the remote controller, such as a curtain, the unit will not operate.
- Do not drop the remote controller. Do not get it wet.
- The maximum distance for communication is about 7m.



■ To fix the remote controller holder on the wall

1. Choose a place from where the signals reach the unit.
2. Fix the holder to a wall, a pillar, etc. with the screws supplied with the holder.
3. Place the remote controller in the remote controller holder.



- To remove, pull it upwards.

ATTENTION

■ About remote controller

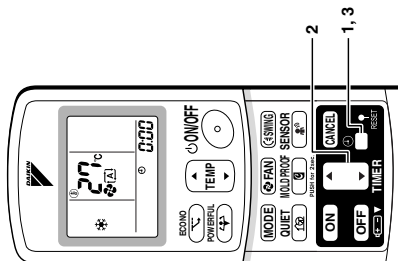
- Never expose the remote controller to direct sunlight.
- Dust on the signal transmitter or receiver will reduce the sensitivity. Wipe off dust with soft cloth.
- Signal communication may be disabled if an electronic-starter-type fluorescent lamp (such as inverter-type lamps) is in the room. Consult the shop if that is the case.
- If the remote control signals happen to operate another appliance, move that appliance to somewhere else, or consult the shop.

■ To set the clock

1. Press "CLOCK button".
0:00 is displayed.
2. Press "TIMER setting button" to set the clock to the present time.

Holding down "▲" or "▼" button rapidly increases or decreases the time display.

3. Press "CLOCK button".
: blinks.



■ Turn the breaker ON

- Turning ON the breaker opens the lap. Then closes it again. (This is a normal procedure.)

NOTE

■ Tips for saving energy

- Be careful not to cool (heat) the room too much.
- Closing the curtains during the moderate level helps save energy.
- Covering windows with a blind or curtain.
- Blocking sunlight and air from outdoors increases the cooling (heating) effect.
- Clogged air filters cause inefficient operation and waste energy. Clean them once in about every two weeks.

■ Please note

- The air conditioner always consumes 15-25 watts of electricity even while it is not operating.
- If you are not going to use the air conditioner for a long period, for example in spring or autumn, turn the breaker OFF.
- Use the air conditioner in the following conditions.

Mode	Operating conditions	If operation is continued out of this range
COOL	Outdoor temperature: 10 to 46°C Indoor temperature: 18 to 32°C Indoor humidity: 80% max.	• A safety device may work to stop the operation. (In multi system, it may work to stop the operation of the outdoor unit only.) • Condensation may occur on the indoor unit and drip.
HEAT	Outdoor temperature: -10 to 20°C Indoor temperature: 10 to 30°C	• A safety device may work to stop the operation.
DRY	Outdoor temperature: 10 to 32°C Indoor humidity: 80% max.	• A safety device may work to stop the operation. • Condensation may occur on the indoor unit and drip.

- Operation outside the humidity or temperature range may cause a safety device to disable the system.

Recommended temperature setting
For cooling: 26°C ~ 28°C
For heating: 20°C ~ 21°C

1.1.5 AUTO · DRY · COOL · HEAT · FAN Operation

AUTO · DRY · COOL · HEAT · FAN Operation

The air conditioner operates with the operation mode of your choice.
From the next time on, the air conditioner will operate with the same operation mode.

■ To start operation

1. Press "MODE selector button" and select a operation mode.

• Each pressing of the button advances the mode setting in sequence.

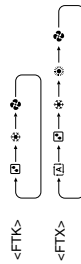
(▲): AUTO

(□): DRY

(★): COOL

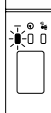
(☀): HEAT

(☼): FAN



2. Press "ON/OFF button".

• The OPERATION lamp lights up.



■ To stop operation

3. Press "ON/OFF button" again.

• Then OPERATION lamp goes off.

■ To change the temperature setting

4. Press "TEMPERATURE adjustment button"

DRY or FAN mode	AUTO or COOL or HEAT mode
	Press "▲" to raise the temperature and press "▼" to lower the temperature. Set to the temperature you like.
The temperature setting is not variable.	

■ To change the air flow rate setting

5. Press "FAN setting button".

DRY mode	AUTO or COOL or HEAT or FAN mode
	Five levels of air flow rate setting from "1" to "5" plus " (A) " " (B) " " (C) " " (D) " are available.
The air flow rate setting is not variable.	

- Indoor unit quiet operation

When the air flow is set to "5", the noise from the indoor unit will become quieter.
Use this when making the noise quieter.

The unit might lose power when the fan strength is set to a weak level.

NOTE

■ Note on HEAT operation

• Since this air conditioner heats the room by taking heat from outdoor air to indoors, the heating capacity becomes smaller in lower outdoor temperatures. If the heating effect is insufficient, it is recommended to use another heating appliance in combination with the air conditioner.

• The heat pump system heats the room by circulating hot air around all parts of the room. After the start of heating operation, it takes some time before the room gets warmer.

• In heating operation, frost may occur on the outdoor unit and lower the heating capacity. In that case, the system switches into defrosting operation to take away the frost.

• During defrosting operation, hot air does not flow out of indoor unit.

■ Note on DRY operation

• The computer chip works to rid the room of humidity while maintaining the temperature as much as possible. It automatically controls temperature and fan strength, so manual adjustment of these functions is unavailable.

■ Note on AUTO operation

• In AUTO operation, the system selects an appropriate operation mode (COOL or HEAT) based on the room temperature at the start of the operation.

• The system automatically reselects setting at a regular interval to bring the room temperature to user-setting level.

• If you do not like AUTO operation, you can manually select the operation mode and setting you like.

■ Note on air flow rate setting

• At smaller air flow rates, the cooling (heating) effect is also smaller.

1.1.6 Adjusting the Air Flow Direction

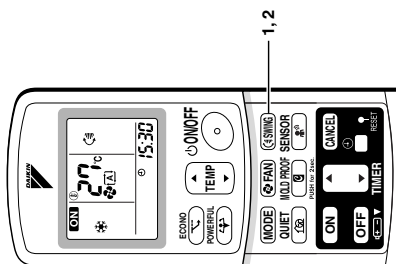
FTK(X)S20D, FTK(X)S25/35G

Adjusting the Air Flow Direction

You can adjust the air flow direction to increase your comfort.

■ To adjust the horizontal blades (flaps)

1. Press "SWING button".
 - "C" is displayed on the LCD and the flaps will begin to swing.
2. When the flaps have reached the desired position, press "SWING button" once more.
 - The flaps will stop moving.
 - "C" disappears from the LCD.

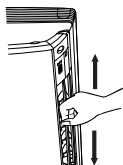


■ To adjust the vertical blades (louvers)

Hold the knob and move the louvers.

(You will find a knob on the left-side and the right-side blades.)

- When the unit is installed in the corner of a room, the direction of the louvers should be facing away from the wall.
- If they face the wall, the wall will block off the wind, causing the cooling (or heating) efficiency to drop.



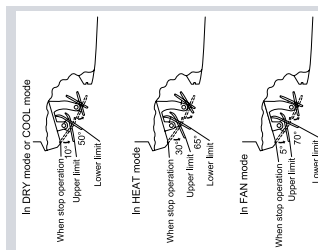
Notes on flaps and louvers angles

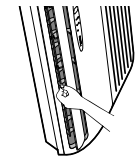
- When "SWING button" is selected, the flaps swinging range depends on the operation mode. (See the figure.)

- If the unit is operated after being stopped with the flaps pointed down in cooling or dry operation, the flaps will automatically move to a horizontal position after about one hour to prevent condensation from forming on them.

■ ATTENTION

- Always use a remote controller to adjust the flaps angle. If you attempt to move it forcibly with hand when it is swinging, the mechanism may be broken.
- Be careful when adjusting the louvers. Inside the air outlet, a fan is rotating at a high speed.





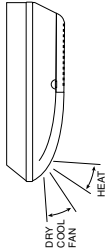
- To adjust the vertical blades (louvers)

- When adjusting the louver, use a robust and stable stool and watch your steps carefully. Hold the knob and move the louvers. (You will find a knob on the left side and the right side blades.)

Notes on flap and louvers angles

- Unless [SWING] is selected, you should set the flap at a near- horizontal angle in COOL or DRY mode to obtain the best performance.
 - In COOL or DRY mode, if the flap is fixed at a downward position, the flap automatically moves in about 60 minutes to prevent condensation on it.
- ATTENTION

 - Always use a remote controller to adjust the flap angle.
 - If you attempt to move it forcibly with hand when it is swinging, the mechanism may be broken.
 - Be careful when adjusting the louvers. Inside the air outlet, a fan is rotating at a high speed.



FLXS25B, FLXS35/50/60G

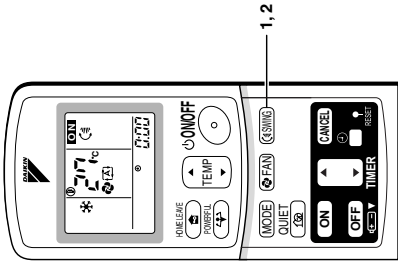
Adjusting the Air Flow Direction

You can adjust the air flow direction to increase your comfort.

- To adjust the horizontal blade (flap)

- Press "SWING button".
 - "C" is displayed on the LCD.
 - When the flaps have reached the desired position, press "SWING button" once more.

The flaps will stop moving.



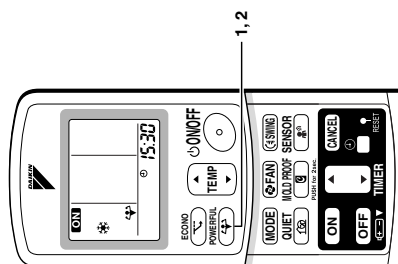
1.1.7 POWERFUL Operation

POWERFUL Operation

POWERFUL operation quickly maximizes the cooling (heating) effect in any operation mode. You can get the maximum capacity.

■ To start POWERFUL operation

1. Press "POWERFUL button".
 - POWERFUL operation ends in 20 minutes. Then the system automatically operates again with the settings which were used before POWERFUL operation.
 - When using POWERFUL operation, there are some functions which are not available.
 - "43" is displayed on the LCD.



■ To cancel POWERFUL operation

- "43" disappears from the LCD.

NOTE

- **Notes on POWERFUL operation**
 - POWERFUL Operation cannot be used together with ECONO or QUIET Operation. Priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.
 - POWERFUL Operation can only be set when the unit is running. Pressing the operation stop button causes the settings to be canceled, and the “4” disappears from the LCD.
 - **In COOL and HEAT mode**
 - To maximize the cooling (heating) effect, the capacity of outdoor unit must be increased and the air flow rate be fixed to the maximum setting.
 - The temperature and air flow settings are not variable.
 - **In DRY mode**
 - The temperature setting is lowered by 2.5 °C and the air flow rate is slightly increased.
 - **In FAN mode**
 - The air flow rate is fixed to the maximum setting.
 - **When using priority-room setting**
 - See “Note for multi system”.

1.1.8 OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET Operation

OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET Operation

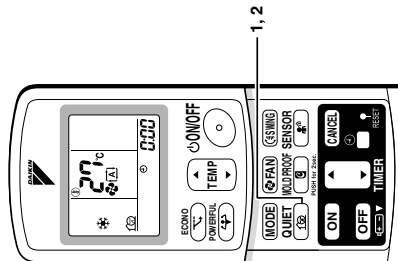
OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation lowers the noise level of the outdoor unit by changing the frequency and fan speed on the outdoor unit. This function is convenient during night.

■ To start OUTDOOR UNIT
QUIET operation

- "12" is displayed on the LCD.

- To cancel OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation

- "12" disappears from the LCD.



NOTE

- **Note on OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation**
 - If using a multi system, this function will work only when the OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation is set on all operated indoor units.
 - However, if using priority-room setting, see "Note for multi system"
 - This function is available in COOL, HEAT, and AUTO modes.
 - (This is not available in FAN and DRY mode.)
- **POWERFUL operation and OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation cannot be used at the same time.**
 - Priority is given to POWERFUL operation.

1.1.10 MOLD PROOF Operation

MOLD PROOF Operation

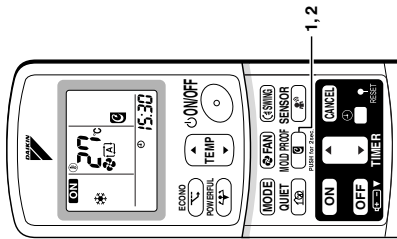
MOLD PROOF operation is a function which reduces the spread of mold by using Fan mode to lower the humidity inside the indoor unit.

■ To set MOLD PROOF operation

1. Press and hold the MOLD PROOF button for two seconds.
• "g" is displayed on the LCD.

■ To cancel MOLD PROOF operation

2. Press and hold the MOLD PROOF button for two seconds one more time.
• "g" disappears from the LCD.



NOTE

- MOLD PROOF operation will operate for approximately one hour after dry or cooling mode is turned off.
- This function is not designed to remove existing dust or mold.
- MOLD PROOF operation is not available when the unit is turned off using the OFF TIMER.

1.1.9 ECONO Operation

ECONO Operation

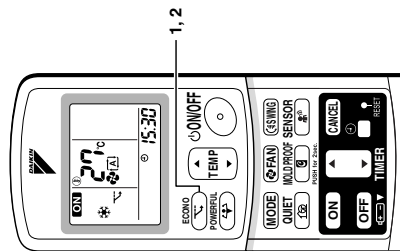
ECONO operation is a function which enables efficient operation by lowering the maximum power consumption value.

■ To start ECONO operation

1. Press "ECONO button".
• "E" is displayed on the LCD.

■ To cancel ECONO operation

2. Press "ECONO button" again.
• "E" disappears from the LCD.



NOTE

- ECONO Operation can only be set when the unit is running. Pressing the operation stop button causes the settings to be canceled, and the "E" disappears from the LCD.
- ECONO operation is a function which enables efficient operation by limiting the power consumption of the outdoor unit (operating frequency).
- ECONO operation functions in AUTO, COOL, DRY, and HEAT modes.
- POWERFUL operation and ECONO operation cannot be used at the same time. Priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.
- Power consumption may not drop even if ECONO operation is used, when the level of power consumption is already low.

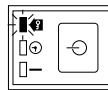
1.1.11 HOME LEAVE Operation

HOME LEAVE Operation

HOME LEAVE operation is a function which allows you to record your preferred temperature and air flow rate settings.

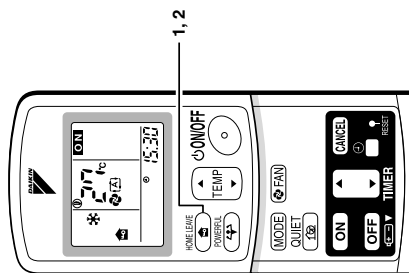
■ To start HOME LEAVE operation

1. Press "HOME LEAVE button".
 - "H" is displayed on the LCD.
 - The HOME LEAVE lamp lights up.



■ To cancel HOME LEAVE operation

2. Press "HOME LEAVE button" again.
 - "H" disappears from the LCD.
 - The HOME LEAVE lamp goes off.



Before using HOME LEAVE operation.

- To set the temperature and air flow rate for HOME LEAVE operation
When using HOME LEAVE operation for the first time, please set the temperature and air flow rate for HOME LEAVE operation. Record your preferred temperature and air flow rate.

	Initial setting			Selectable range	
	Temperature	Air flow rate	Temperature	Air flow rate	
Cooling	25°C	"L"	18-32°C	5 step, "L" and "H"	
Heating	25°C	"H"	10-30°C	5 step, "L" and "H"	

1. Press "HOME LEAVE button". Make sure "H" is displayed in the remote control display.
 2. Adjust the set temperature with "▲" or "▼" as you like.
 3. Adjust the air flow rate with "FAN" setting button as you like.
- Home leave operation will run with these settings the next time you use the unit. To change the recorded information, repeat steps 1 - 3.

■ What's the HOME LEAVE operation?

Is there a set temperature and air flow rate which is most comfortable, a set temperature and air flow rate which you use the most? HOME LEAVE operation is a function that allows you to record your favorite set temperature and air flow rate. You can start your favorite operation mode simply by pressing the HOME LEAVE button on the remote control. This function is convenient in the following situations.

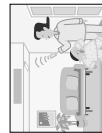
■ Useful in these cases

1. Use as an energy-saving mode.
Set the temperature 2-3°C higher (cooling) or lower (heating) than normal. Setting the fan strength to the lowest setting allows the unit to be used in energy-saving mode. Also convenient for use while you are out or sleeping.
- Every day before you leave the house...



When you go out, push the HOME LEAVE Operation button, and the air conditioner will start HOME LEAVE Operation.

- Before bed...



Set the unit to HOME LEAVE Operation before leaving the living room when going to bed.

The unit will maintain the temperature in the room at a comfortable level while you sleep.

When you enter the living room in the morning, the temperature will be just right.

Push the HOME LEAVE Operation button again, and the air conditioner will return the temperature to that set for normal operation. Even the coldest winters will pose no problem.

2. Use as a favorite mode.

Once you record the temperature and air flow rate settings you most often use, you can retrieve them by pressing HOME LEAVE button. You do not have to go through troublesome remote control operations.

NOTE

- Once the temperature and air flow rate for HOME LEAVE operation are set, those settings will be used whenever HOME LEAVE operation is used in the future. To change these settings, please refer to the "Before using HOME LEAVE operation" section above.
- HOME LEAVE operation is only available in COOL and HEAT mode. Cannot be used in AUTO, DRY, and FAN mode.
- HOME LEAVE operation runs in accordance with the previous operation mode (COOL or HEAT) before using HOME LEAVE operation.
- HOME LEAVE operation and POWERFUL operation cannot be used at the same time.
- Last button that was pressed has priority.
- The operation mode cannot be changed while HOME LEAVE operation is being used.
- When operation is shut off during HOME LEAVE operation, using the remote controller or the indoor unit ON/OFF switch, "H" will remain on the remote controller display.

1.1.12 INTELLIGENT EYE Operation

INTELLIGENT EYE Operation

"INTELLIGENT EYE" is the infrared sensor which detects the human movement.

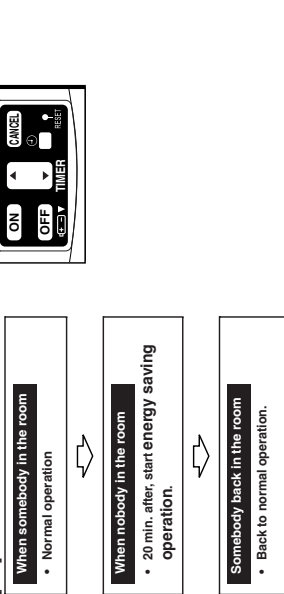
To start INTELLIGENT EYE operation

- Press "SENSOR button".
- "* * *" is displayed on the LCD.

To cancel the INTELLIGENT EYE operation

- Press "SENSOR button" again.
- "* * *" disappears from the LCD.

[EX.]

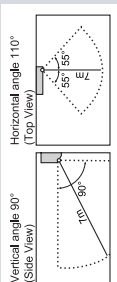


"INTELLIGENT EYE" is useful for Energy Saving

- Energy saving operation**
 - Change the temperature -2°C in heating / +2°C in cooling / -2°C in dry mode from set temperature.
 - Decrease the air flow rate slightly in fan operation. (In FAN mode only)

Notes on "INTELLIGENT EYE"

- Application range is as follows.



- Sensor may not detect moving objects further than 7m away. (Check the application range)
- Sensor detection sensitivity changes according to indoor unit location, the speed of passersby, temperature range, etc.
- The sensor also mistakenly detects pets, sunlight, fluttering curtains and light reflected off of mirrors as passersby.
- INTELLIGENT EYE operation will not go on during powerful operation.
- Night set mode will not go on during you use INTELLIGENT EYE operation.

CAUTION

- Do not place large objects near the sensor.
- Also keep heating units or humidifiers outside the sensor's detection area. This sensor can detect objects it shouldn't as well as not detect objects it should.
- Do not hit or violently push the INTELLIGENT EYE sensor. This can lead to damage and malfunction.

1.1.13 TIMER Operation

TIMER Operation

Timer functions are useful for automatically switching the air conditioner on or off at night or in the morning. You can also use OFF TIMER and ON TIMER in combination.

■ To use OFF TIMER operation

- Check that the clock is correct. If not, set the clock to the present time.

1. Press "OFF TIMER button".

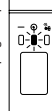
0:00 is displayed.
0-1 blinks.

2. Press "TIMER Setting button" until the time setting reaches the point you like.

- Every pressing of either button increases or decreases the time setting by 10 minutes. Holding down either button changes the setting rapidly.

3. Press "OFF TIMER button" again.

- The TIMER lamp lights up.



■ To cancel the OFF TIMER operation

- #### 4. Press "CANCEL button".
- The TIMER lamp goes off.

NOTE

- When TIMER is set, the present time is not displayed.
- Once you set ON, OFF TIMER, the time setting is kept in the memory. (The memory is canceled when remote controller batteries are replaced.)
- When operating the unit via the ON/OFF Timer, the actual length of operation may vary from the time entered by the user. (Maximum approx. 10 minutes)

■ NIGHT SET MODE

When the OFF TIMER is set, the air conditioner automatically adjusts the temperature setting (0.5°C up in COOL, 2.0°C down in HEAT) to prevent excessive cooling (heating) for your pleasant sleep.

■ To use ON TIMER operation

- Check that the clock is correct. If not, set the clock to the present time

1. Press "ON TIMER button".

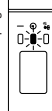
0:00 is displayed.
0-1 blinks.

2. Press "TIMER Setting button" until the time setting reaches the point you like.

- Every pressing of either button increases or decreases the time setting by 10 minutes. Holding down either button changes the setting rapidly.

3. Press "ON TIMER button" again.

- The TIMER lamp lights up.

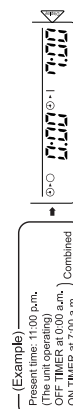


■ To cancel ON TIMER operation

- #### 4. Press "CANCEL button".
- The TIMER lamp goes off.

■ To combine ON TIMER and OFF TIMER

- A sample setting for combining the two timers is shown below.



ATTENTION

■ In the following cases, set the timer again.

- After a breaker has turned OFF.
- After a power failure.
- After replacing batteries in the remote controller.

1.1.14 Note for Multi System

Note for Multi System

《《 What is a "Multi System"? 》》

This system has one outdoor unit connected to multiple indoor units.

■ Selecting the Operation Mode

1. With the Priority Room Setting present but inactive or not present.

When more than one indoor unit is operating, priority is given to the first unit that was turned on.

In this case, set the units that are turned on later to the same operation mode (*) as the first unit.

Otherwise, they will enter the Standby Mode, and the operation lamp will flash; this does not indicate malfunction.

(*)

- COOL, DRY and FAN mode may be used at the same time.

- AUTO mode automatically selects COOL mode or HEAT mode based on the room temperature. Therefore, AUTO mode is available when selecting the same operation mode as that of the room with the first unit to be turned on.

(CAUTION)

Normally, the operation mode in the room where the unit is first run is given priority, but the following situations are exceptions. Please keep this in mind.

If the operation mode of the first room is FAN Mode, then using **Heating Mode** in any room after this will give priority to heating. In this situation, the air conditioner running in FAN Mode will go on standby, and the operation lamp will flash.

2. With the Priority Room Setting active.

See "Priority Room Setting" on the next page.

■ NIGHT QUIET Mode (Available only for cooling operation)

NIGHT QUIET Mode requires initial programming during installation. Please consult your retailer or dealer for assistance. NIGHT QUIET Mode reduces the operation noise of the outdoor unit during the night time hours to prevent annoyance to neighbors.

- The NIGHT QUIET Mode is activated when the temperature drops 5°C or more below the highest temperature recorded that day. Therefore, when the temperature difference is less than 5°C, this function will not be activated.
- NIGHT QUIET Mode reduces slightly the cooling efficiency of the unit.

■ OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET Operation

1. With the Priority Room Setting present but inactive or not present.

When using the OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation feature with the Multi system, set all indoor units to OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation using their remote controllers.

When clearing OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation, clear one of the operating indoor units using their remote controller.

However OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation display remains on the remote controller for other rooms. We recommend you release all rooms using their remote controllers.

2. With the Priority Room Setting active.

See "Priority Room Setting" on the next page.

■ Cooling / Heating Mode Lock (Available only for heat pump models)

The Cooling / Heating Mode Lock requires initial programming during installation. Please consult your retailer or dealer for assistance. The Cooling / Heating Mode Lock sets the unit forcibly to either Cooling or Heating Mode. This function is convenient when you wish to set all indoor units connected to the Multi system to the same operation mode.

■ Priority Room Setting

The Priority Room Setting requires initial programming during installation. Please consult your retailer or dealer for assistance.

The room designated as the Priority Room takes priority in the following situations;

1. Operation Mode Priority.

As the operation mode of the Priority Room takes precedence, the user can select a different operation mode from other rooms.

(Example)

• Room A is the Priority Room in the examples.

When COOL mode is selected in Room A while operating the following modes in Room B, C and D :

Operation mode in Room B, C and D	Status of Room B, C and D
COOL or DRY or FAN	Current operation mode maintained
HEAT	The unit enters Standby Mode. Operation resumes when the Room A unit stops operating.
AUTO	If the unit is set to COOL mode, operation continues. If set to HEAT mode, it enters Standby Mode. Operation resumes when the Room A unit stops operating.

2. Priority when POWERFUL operation is used.

(Example)

• Room A is the Priority Room in the examples.

The indoor units in Rooms A, B, C and D are all operating. If the unit in Room A enters POWERFUL operation, operation capacity will be concentrated in Room A. In such a case, the cooling (heating) efficiency of the units in Rooms B, C and D may be slightly reduced.

3. Priority when using OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation.

(Example)

• Room A is the Priority Room in the examples.

Just by setting the unit in Room A to QUIET operation, the air conditioner starts OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation.

You don't have to set all the operated indoor units to QUIET operation.

1.1.15 Care and Cleaning

FTK(X)S20D, FTK(X)S25/35G

Care and Cleaning

⚠ CAUTION Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation and turn the breaker OFF.

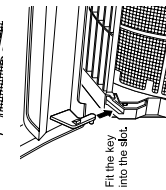
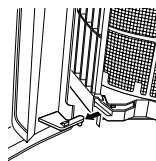
Units

■ Indoor unit, Outdoor unit and Remote controller

1. Wipe them with dry soft cloth.

■ Front panel

1. Open the front panel.
 - Hold the panel by the tabs on the two sides and lift it until it stops with a click.
2. Remove the front panel.
 - Lift the front panel up, slide it slightly to the right, and remove it from the horizontal axle.
3. Clean the front panel.
 - Wipe it with a soft cloth soaked in water.
 - Only neutral detergent may be used.
 - In case of washing the panel with water, dry it with cloth, dry it up in the shade after washing.



Fit the key into the slot.

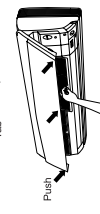
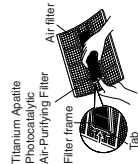
4. Attach the front panel.
 - Set the 2 keys of the front panel into the slots and push them in all the way.
 - Close the front panel slowly and push the panel at the 3 points.
(1 on each side and 1 in the middle.)

⚠ CAUTION

- Don't touch the metal parts of the indoor unit. If you touch those parts, this may cause an injury.
- When removing or attaching the front panel, use a robust and stable stool and watch your steps carefully.
- When removing or attaching the front panel, support the panel securely with hand to prevent it from falling.
- For cleaning, do not use hot water above 40°C, benzine, gasoline, thinner, nor other volatile oils, polishing compound, scrubbing brushes, nor other hard stuff.
- After cleaning, make sure that the front panel is securely fixed.

Filters

1. Open the front panel.
2. Pull out the air filters.
 - Push a little upwards the tab at the center of each air filter, then pull it down.
3. Take off the Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Air-Purifying Filter.
 - Hold the recessed parts of the frame and unhook the four claws.
4. Clean or replace each filter.
 - See figure.



5. Set the air filter and Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Air-Purifying Filter as they were and close the front panel.
 - Insert claws of the filters into slots of the front panel.

Close the front panel slowly and push the panel at the 3 points. (1 on each side and 1 in the middle.)

■ Air Filter

1. Wash the air filters with water or clean them with vacuum cleaner.

- If the dust does not come off easily, wash them with neutral detergent thinned with lukewarm water, then dry them up in the shade.
- It is recommended to clean the air filters every two weeks.



■ Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Air-Purifying Filter.

The Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Air-Purifying Filter can be renewed by washing it with water once every 6 months. We recommend replacing it once every 3 years.

[Maintenance]

1. Remove dust with a vacuum cleaner and wash lightly with water.
2. If it is very dirty, soak it for 10 to 15 minutes in water mixed with a neutral cleaning agent.
3. Do not remove filter from frame when washing with water.
4. After washing, shake off remaining water and dry in the shade.
5. Since the material is made out of paper, do not wring out the filter when removing water from it.

[Replacement]

1. Remove the tabs on the filter frame and replace with a new filter.
 - Dispose of the old filter as flammable waste.

NOTE

- Operation with dirty filters:
 - (1) cannot deodorize the air.
 - (2) cannot clean the air.
 - (3) results in poor heating or cooling.
 - (4) may cause odour.
- To order Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Air-Purifying Filter contact to the service shop there you bought the air conditioner.
- Dispose of old filters as burnable waste.

Item	Part No.
Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Air-Purifying Filter. (without frame) 1 set	KAF970A46

Check

Check that the base, stand and other fittings of the outdoor unit are not decayed or corroded.

Check that nothing blocks the air inlets and the outlets of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.

Check that the drain comes smoothly out of the drain hose during COOL or DRY operation.

- If no drain water is seen, water may be leaking from the indoor unit. Stop operation and consult the service shop if this is the case.

■ Before a long idle period

- Operate the "Fan only" for several hours on a fine day to dry out the inside.
 - Press "MODE selector button" and select "Fan" operation.
 - Press "ON/OFF button" and start operation.
- After operation stops, turn off the breaker for the room air conditioner.
- Clean the air filters and set them again.
- Take out batteries from the remote controller.
 - When a multi outdoor unit is connected, make sure the heating operation is not used at the other room before you use the fan operation.

CDKS25/35/50/60C, FDXS25/35/50/60C

Care and Cleaning



CAUTION • Only a qualified service person is allowed to perform maintenance.

- Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation and turn the breaker OFF.

■ Cleaning the air filter

1. Removing the air filter.

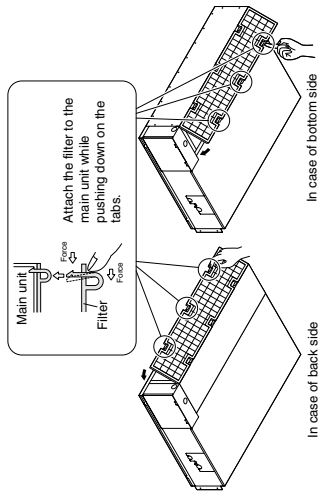
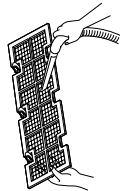
- Rear suction
 - Put the bottom side of the air filter backwards, over the 3 bends.
- Bottom suction
 - Put the filter over the 3 bends situated at the backside of the unit.

2. Cleaning the air filter.

Remove dust from the air filter using a vacuum cleaner and gently rinse them in cool water. Do not use detergent or hot water to avoid filter shrinking or deformation. After cleaning dry them in the shade.

3. Replacing the air filter.

- Rear suction
 - Hook the filter behind the flap situated at the top of the unit and push the other side gently over the 3 bends.
- Bottom suction
 - Hook the filter behind the flap situated at the middle of the unit and push the other side gently over the 3 bends.



■ Cleaning the drain pan

- Clean the drain pan periodically, or drain piping may be clogged with dust and may result in water leakage.
- Ask your DAIKIN dealer to clean them.
- Prepare a cover locally to prevent any dust in the air around the indoor unit from getting in the drain pan, if there is a great deal of dust present.

CAUTION

- Do not operate the air conditioner without filters, this to avoid dust accumulation inside the unit.
- Do not remove the air filter except when cleaning.
- Unnecessary handling may damage the filter.
- Do not use gasoline, benzene, thinner, polishing powder, liquid insecticide, it may cause discoloring or warping.
- Do not let the indoor unit get wet. It may cause an electric shock or a fire.
- Operation with dusty air filters lowers the cooling and heating capacity and wastes energy.
- The suction grille is optional.
- Do not use water or air of 50 °C or higher for cleaning air filters and outside panels.

Check

Check that the base, stand and other fittings of the outdoor unit are not decayed or corroded.

Check that nothing blocks the air inlets and the outlets of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.

- Check that the drain comes smoothly out of the drain hose during COOL or DRY operation.
- If no drain water is seen, water may be leaking from the indoor unit. Stop operation and consult the service shop if this is the case.

■ Before a long idle period

1. Operate the "Fan only" for several hours on a fine day to dry out the inside.
 - Press "MODE selector button" and select "FAN" operation.
 - Press "ON/OFF button" and start operation.
2. After operation stops, turn off the breaker for the room air conditioner.
3. Clean the air filters and set them again.
4. Take out batteries from the remote controller.
 - When a multi outdoor unit is connected, make sure the heating operation is not used at the other room before you use the fan operation.

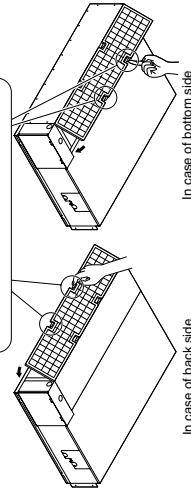
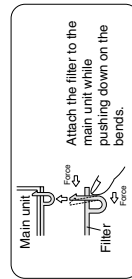
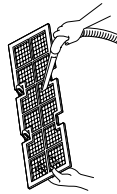
CDK(X)S25/35EA

Care and Cleaning

- ⚠ **CAUTION** • Only a qualified service person is allowed to perform maintenance.
- Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation and turn the breaker OFF.

■ Cleaning the air filter

1. Removing the air filter.
 - Rear suction
 - Pull the bottom side of the air filter backwards, over the bends.
 - Bottom suction
 - Pull the filter over the bends situated at the backside of the unit.
2. Cleaning the air filter.
 - Remove dust from the air filter using a vacuum cleaner and gently rinse them in cool water. Do not use detergent or hot water to avoid filter shrinking or deformation. After cleaning dry them in the shade.
3. Replacing the air filter.
 - Rear suction
 - Hook the filter behind the flap situated at the top of the unit and push the other side gently over the bends.
 - Bottom suction
 - Hook the filter behind the flap situated at the middle of the unit and push the other side gently over the bends.



In case of back side

In case of bottom side

■ Cleaning the drain pan

- Clean the drain pan periodically, or drain piping may be clogged with dust and may result in water leakage. Ask your DAIKIN dealer to clean them.
- Prepare a cover locally to prevent any dust in the air around the indoor unit from getting in the drain pan, if there is a great deal of dust present.

CAUTION

- Do not operate the air conditioner without filters, this to avoid dust accumulation inside the unit.
- Do not remove the air filter except when cleaning.
- Unnecessary handling may damage the filter.
- Do not use gasoline, benzene, thinner, polishing powder, liquid insecticide, it may cause discoloring or warping.
- Do not let the indoor unit get wet. It may cause an electric shock or a fire.
- Operation with dusty air filters lowers the cooling and heating capacity and wastes energy.
- The suction grille is optional.
- Do not use water or air of 50 °C or higher for cleaning air filters and outside panels.
- Ask your DAIKIN dealer how to clean it.

Check

Check that the base, stand and other fittings of the outdoor unit are not decayed or corroded.

Check that nothing blocks the air inlets and the outlets of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.

- Check that the drain comes smoothly out of the drain hose during COOL or DRY operation.
- If no drain water is seen, water may be leaking from the indoor unit. Stop operation and consult the service shop if this is the case.

■ Before a long idle period

1. Operate the "FAN only" for several hours on a fine day to dry out the inside.
 - Press "MODE selector button" and select "FAN" operation.
 - Press "ON/OFF button" and start operation.
2. After operation stops, turn off the breaker for the room air conditioner.
3. Clean the air filters and set them again.
4. Take out batteries from the remote controller.
 - When a multi outdoor unit is connected, make sure the heating operation is not used at the other room before you use the fan operation.

Care and Cleaning

CAUTION Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation and turn the breaker OFF.

Units

■ Indoor unit, Outdoor unit and Remote controller

1. Wipe them with dry soft cloth.

■ Front grille

1. Open the front grille.
 - Hold the grille by the tabs on the two sides and lift it until it stops.
2. Clean the front grille
 - Wipe it with a soft cloth soaked in water.
 - Only neutral detergent may be used.
 - In case of washing the grille with water, dry it with cloth, dry it up in the shade after washing.
3. Close the front grille
 - Push the grille at the 5 points indicated by ↓.
 - Operation without air filters may result in troubles as dust will accumulate inside the indoor unit.



CAUTION

- Don't touch the metal parts of the indoor unit. If you touch those parts, this may cause an injury.
- When opening and closing the front grille, use a robust and stable stool and watch your steps carefully.
- For cleaning, do not use hot water above 40 °C, benzene, gasoline, thinner, nor other volatile oils, polishing compound, scrubbing brushes, nor other hand stuff.
- After cleaning, make sure that the front grille is securely fixed.

Filters

1. Open the front grille.
2. Pull out the air filters.
 - Push upwards the tab at the center of each air filter, then pull it down.
3. Take off the air purifying filter, photocatalytic deodorizing filter.
 - Hold the recessed parts of the frame and unhook the four claws.
4. Clean or replace each filter.
 - See figure.
5. Set the air filter, air purifying filter and photocatalytic deodorizing filter as they were and close the front grille.
 - Insert claws of the filters into slots of the front panel.
 - Push the grille at the 5 points.

Air Filter

1. Wash the air filters with water or clean them with vacuum cleaner.
 - If the dust does not come off easily, wash them with neutral detergent thinned with lukewarm water, then dry them up in the shade.
 - It is recommended to clean the air filters every two weeks.

Air Purifying Filter (green)

- (Replace approximately once every 3 months.)
1. Detach the filter element and attach a new one.
 - Insert with the green side up.
 - It is recommended to replace the air purifying filter every three months.

Photocatalytic Deodorizing Filter (gray)

[Maintenance]

1. Dry the photocatalytic deodorizing filter in the sun.
 - After removing the dust with a vacuum cleaner, place the filter in the sun for approximately 6 hours. By drying the photocatalytic deodorizing filter in the sun, its deodorizing and antibacterial capabilities are regenerated.

- Because the filter material is paper, it can not be cleaned with water.
- It is recommended dry the filter once every 6 months.

[Replacement]

1. Detach the filter element and attach a new one.

Check

Check that the base, stand and other fittings of the outdoor unit are not decayed or corroded.
Check that nothing blocks the air inlets and the outlets of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.
Check that the drain comes smoothly out of the drain hose during COOL or DRY operation.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If no drain water is seen, water may be leaking from the indoor unit. Stop operation and consult the service shop if this is the case.

Before a long idle period

1. Operate the "FAN only" for several hours on a fine day to dry out the inside.
 - Press "MODE selector button" and select "FAN" operation.
 - Press "ON/OFF button" and start operation.
2. After operation stops, turn off the breaker for the room air conditioner.
3. Clean the air filters and set them again.
4. Take out batteries from the remote controller.
 - When a multi outdoor unit is connected, make sure the heating operation is not used at the other room before you use the fan operation.

NOTE

- Operation with dirty filters :
 - (1) cannot deodorize the air.
 - (2) cannot clean the air.
 - (3) results in poor heating or cooling.
 - (4) may cause odour.
- The air purifying filter and Photocatalytic deodorizing filter cannot be reused, even if washed.
- In principle, there is no need to replace the photocatalytic deodorizing filter. Remove the dust periodically with a vacuum cleaner. However, it is recommended to replace the filter in the following cases.
 - (1) The paper material is torn or broken during cleaning.
 - (2) The filter has become extremely dry after long use.
- To order air purifying filter or Photocatalytic deodorizing filter, contact to the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.
- Dispose of old air filters as non-burnable waste and Photocatalytic deodorizing filters as burnable waste.

Item	Part No.
Photocatalytic deodorizing filter (with frame)	KAZ317B41
Photocatalytic deodorizing filter (without frame)	KAZ317B42
Air purifying filter (with frame)	KAF325B41
Air purifying filter (without frame)	KAF325B42

1.1.16 Troubleshooting

Trouble Shooting

These cases are not troubles.

The following cases are not air conditioner troubles but have some reasons. You may just continue using it.

Case	Explanation
Operation does not start soon. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When ON/OFF button was pressed soon after operation was stopped. When the mode was reselected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This is to protect the air conditioner. You should wait for about 3 minutes.
Hot air does not flow out soon after the start of heating operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The air conditioner is warming up. You should wait for 1 to 4 minutes. (The system is designed to start discharging air only after it has reached a certain temperature.)
The heating operation stops suddenly and a flowing sound is heard.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The system is taking away the frost on the outdoor unit. You should wait for about 3 to 8 minutes.
The outdoor unit emits water or steam.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In HEAT mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The frost on the outdoor unit melts into water or steam when the air conditioner is in defrost operation. In COOL or DRY mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Moisture in the air condenses into water on the cool surface of outdoor unit piping and drips.
Mists come out of the indoor unit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This happens when the air in the room is cooled into mist by the cold air flow during cooling operation.
The indoor unit gives out odour.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This happens when smells of the room, furniture, or cigarettes are absorbed into the unit and discharged with the air flow. (If this happens, we recommend you to have the indoor unit washed by a technician. Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.)
The outdoor fan rotates while the air conditioner is not in operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> After operation is stopped: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The outdoor fan continues rotating for another 60 seconds for system protection. While the air conditioner is not in operation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the outdoor temperature is very high, the outdoor fan starts rotating for system protection.
The operation stopped suddenly. (OPERATION lamp is on)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For system protection, the air conditioner may stop operating on a sudden large voltage fluctuation. It automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes.

Check again.

Please check again before calling a repair person.

Case	Check
The air conditioner does not operate. (OPERATION lamp is off)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hasn't a breaker turned OFF or a fuse blown? Isn't it a power failure? Are batteries set in the remote controller? Is the timer setting correct?
Cooling (Heating) effect is poor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Are the air filters clean? Is there anything to block the air inlet or the outlet of the indoor and the outdoor units? Is the temperature setting appropriate? Are the windows and doors closed? Are the air flow rate and the air direction set appropriately? Is the unit set to the INTELLIGENT EYE mode?
Operation stops suddenly. (OPERATION lamp flashes.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Are the air filters clean? Is there anything to block the air inlet or the outlet of the indoor and the outdoor units? Clean the air filters or take all obstacles away and turn the breaker OFF. Then turn it ON again and try operating the air conditioner with the remote controller. If the lamp still flashes, call the service shop where you bought the air conditioner. Are operation modes all the same for indoor units connected to outdoor units in the multi system? If not, set all indoor units to the same operation mode and confirm that the lamps flash. Moreover, when the operation mode is in "AUTO", set all indoor unit operation modes to "COOL" or "HEAT" for a moment and check again that the lamps are normal. If the lamps stop flashing after the above steps, there is no malfunction.
An abnormal functioning happens during operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The air conditioner may malfunction with lightning or radio waves. Turn the breaker OFF, turn it ON again and try operating the air conditioner with the remote controller.

Call the service shop immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- When an abnormality (such as a burning smell) occurs, stop operation and turn the breaker OFF. Continued operation in an abnormal condition may result in troubles, electric shocks or fire. Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.
- Do not attempt to repair or modify the air conditioner by yourself. Incorrect work may result in electric shocks or fire. Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.

If one of the following symptoms takes place, call the service shop immediately.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The power cord is abnormally hot or damaged. ■ An abnormal sound is heard during operation. ■ The safety breaker, a fuse, or the earth leakage breaker cuts off the operation frequently. ■ A switch or a button often fails to work properly. ■ There is a burning smell. ■ Water leaks from the indoor unit. 	<p>Turn the breaker OFF and call the service shop.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ After a power failure <p>The air conditioner automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes. You should just wait for a while.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Lightning <p>If lightning may strike the neighbouring area, stop operation and turn the breaker OFF for system protection.</p>

We recommend periodical maintenance.

In certain operating conditions, the inside of the air conditioner may get foul after several seasons of use, resulting in poor performance. It is recommended to have periodical maintenance by a specialist aside from regular cleaning by the user. For specialist maintenance, contact the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.

The maintenance cost must be born by the user.

1.2 FTK(X)S50/60/71J Series

Safety Precautions

- Keep this manual where the operator can easily find them.
- Read the precautions in this manual carefully before operating the unit.
- The precautions described herein are classified as **WARNING** and **CAUTION**. They both contain important information regarding safety. Be sure to observe all precautions without fail.

⚠ WARNING	⚠ CAUTION
<p>Failure to follow these instructions properly may result in personal injury or loss of life.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Never attempt. Be sure to follow the instructions. Be sure to establish an earth connection. <p>After reading, keep this manual in a convenient place so that you can refer to it whenever necessary. If the equipment is transferred to a new user, be sure also to hand over the manual.</p>	<p>Failure to observe these instructions properly may result in property damage or personal injury, which may be serious depending on the circumstances.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Never wet the air conditioner nor the remote controller with water. Never touch the air conditioner nor the remote controller with wet hands.
<p>⚠ WARNING</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In order to avoid fire, explosion or injury, do not operate the unit when harmful, among which flammable or corrosive gases are present. • Be aware that prolonged, direct exposure to cool or warm air from the air conditioner, or to air that is too cool or too warm can be harmful to your physical condition and health. • Do not place objects, including rods, your fingers, etc., in the air inlet or outlet. Product malfunctioning, product or injury damage may result due to contact with the air conditioner's high-speed fan blades. • Do not attempt to disassemble, modify, repair, or install or modify the air conditioner yourself as this may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards. • Do not use flammable spray near the air conditioner, or otherwise fire may result. • Beware of fire in case of refrigerant leakage. If the air conditioner is not operating correctly (i.e. not generating cool or warm air, refrigerant leakage could be the cause. Consult your dealer for assistance. The refrigerant within the air conditioner is safe and normally does not leak. • However, in the event of a leakage, contact with a naked burner, heater or cooker may result in generation of noxious gas. Do not linger use the air conditioner until a qualified service person confirms that the leakage has been eliminated. • Do not attempt to install or repair the air conditioner yourself. Improper workmanship may result in water leakage, electric shocks or fire hazards. Please contact your local dealer or qualified personnel for installation and maintenance work. • When the air conditioner is malfunctioning (giving off a burning odour, etc.) turn off power to the unit and contact your local dealer or qualified service person for repair. Do not attempt to repair the unit yourself. • Be sure to install an earth leakage breaker. Failure to install an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shocks or fire. • Be sure to earth the unit. Do not earth the unit to a utility pipe, lightning conductor or telephone earth lead. Imperfect earthing may result in electric shocks. 	<p>⚠ CAUTION</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not use the air conditioner for purposes other than those for which it is intended. Do not use the air conditioner for cooling precision instruments, food, plants, animals or works of art as this may adversely affect the performance, durability and longevity of the object concerned. • Do not place appliances that produce naked flames in places exposed to the airflow from the unit as this may impair combustion of the burner.

CAUTION

- Do not block air inlets nor outlets. Impaired airflow may result in insufficient performance or trouble.
- Do not place objects that may cause accidents, such as falling or tripping, on the indoor unit.
- Do not place objects that are susceptible to injury, product malfunctioning, or product damage, under certain conditions, condensation on the main unit or refrigerant pipes, air filter dirt or drain blockage may cause dripping, resulting in fouling or failure of the object concerned.
- After prolonged use, check the unit stand and its mounts for damage. If left in a damaged condition, the unit may fall.
- To avoid injury, do not touch the air inlet or aluminium fins of the indoor or outdoor units.
- The appliance is not intended for use by unattended young children or infirm persons. Impairment of bodily functions and harm to health may result.
- Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the unit or its remote controller. Accidental use of the remote controller may result in injury or property damage.
- Do not place flammable items, such as spray cans, within 1 meter of the air outlet.
- The spray cans may explode as a result of hot air from the indoor or outdoor units.
- Be careful not to let pets urinate on the air conditioner. Urination on the air conditioner may result in electric shocks or fire.
- To avoid oxygen depletion, ensure that the room is adequately ventilated if equipment such as a burner is used together with the air conditioner.
- Do not use the indoor unit operation, turn the breaker off or remove the power cord. Otherwise, an electric shock and injury may result.
- Only connect the air conditioner to the specified power supply circuit. Power supplies other than the one specified may result in electric shocks, overheating and fires.
- Arrange the drain hose to ensure smooth drainage. Imperfect drainage may cause wetting of the building, furniture etc.
- Do not place objects that may block the outdoor unit fan or the air inlet. Leaves are a hazard for the outdoor unit fan. Leaves are a hazard for small animals which can enter the unit. Once in the unit, such animals can cause malfunctions, smoke or fire when making contact with electrical parts.
- Do not place objects around the indoor unit.
- Doing so may have an adverse influence on the performance, product quality, and life of the air conditioner.
- To avoid electric shocks, do not operate with wet hands.



- Do not wash the air conditioner with water, as this may result in electric shocks or fire.
- Do not place water containers (flower etc.) above the unit, as this may result in electric shocks or fire hazards.

Installation site.

- To install the air conditioner in the following types of environments, consult the dealer.
 - Places with an oily ambient or where steam or soot occurs.
 - Salty environment such as coastal areas.
 - Places where sulfide gas occurs such as hot springs.
 - Places where the outdoor unit may be blocked by the building or other objects.
 - The indoor unit is at least 1 meter away from any television or radio set (unit may cause interference with the picture or sound).
 - The drain from the outdoor unit must be discharged to a place of good drainage.

Consider nuisance to your neighbours from noises

- For installation, choose a place as described below.
 - A place solid enough to bear the weight of the unit which does not amplify the operation noise or vibration.
 - A place from where the air discharged from the outdoor unit or the operation noise will not annoy your neighbours.

Electrical work.

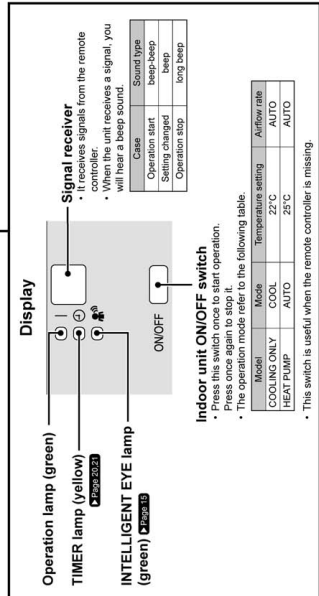
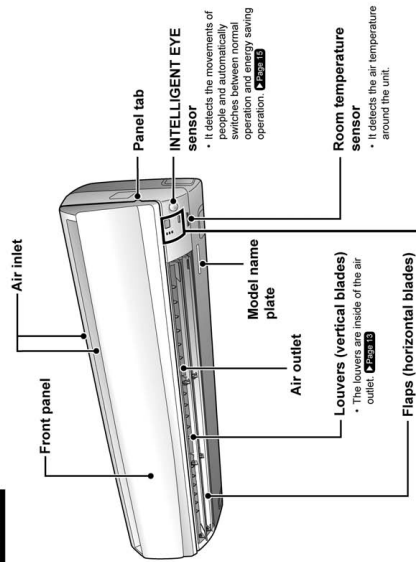
- For power supply, be sure to use a separate power circuit dedicated to the air conditioner.

System relocation.

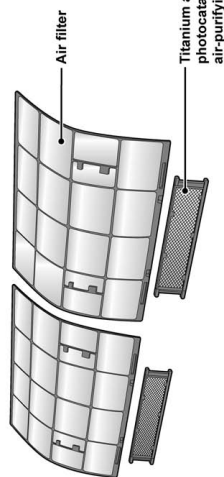
- Relocating the air conditioner requires specialized knowledge and skills. Please consult the dealer if relocation is necessary for moving or remodeling.

Name of Parts

Indoor Unit

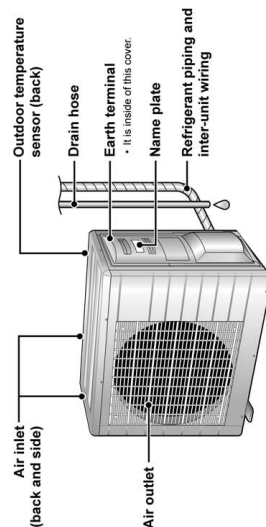


■ Open the front panel



Outdoor Unit

• Appearance of the outdoor unit may differ from some models.



6

Name of Parts

Remote Controller



- To use the remote controller, aim the transmitter at the indoor unit. If there is anything to block signals between the unit and the remote controller, the unit will not operate. Confirm, the unit will not operate.
- Do not drop the remote controller. Do not get it wet.
- The maximum distance for communication is approx. 7m.

Display (LCD)

- It displays the current settings. (In this illustration, each section is shown with the displays on for the purpose of explanation.)

TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons

- It changes the temperature setting. ▶ Page 12

ON/OFF button

- Press this button once to start operation. Press once again to stop it. ▶ Page 13

Front cover

- Open the front cover. ▶ Page 8

HEAT PUMP model	ARC452A4
COOLING ONLY model	ARC452A13

FAN setting button

- It selects the airflow rate setting. ▶ Page 14

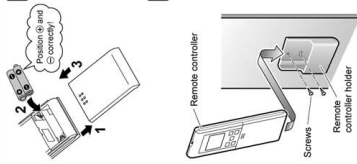
POWERFUL button

- POWERFUL operation. ▶ Page 15

7

Preparation before Operation

- To set the batteries
1. Slide the front cover to take it off.
 2. Set 2 dry batteries AAA.LR03 (alkaline).
 3. Set the front cover as before.
- To fix the remote controller holder on the wall
1. Choose a place from where the signals reach the unit.
 2. Fix the holder to a wall, a pillar, etc. with the screws supplied with the holder.
 3. Place the remote controller in the remote controller holder.

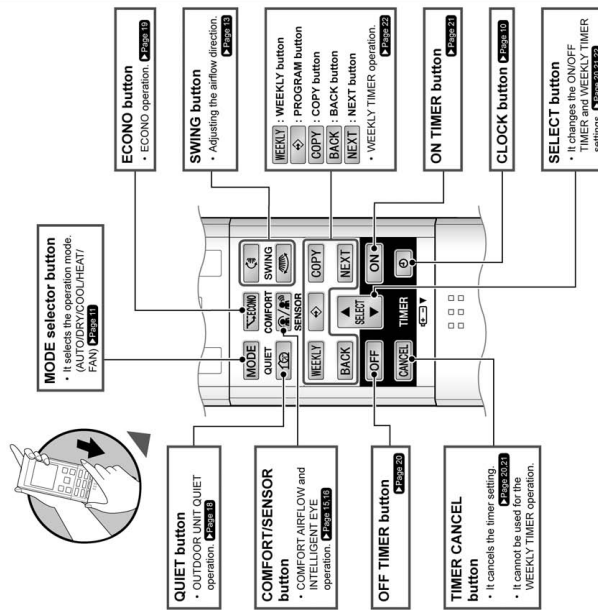


NOTE

- Notes on batteries
- When replacing the batteries, use batteries of the same type, and replace the 2 old batteries together.
 - When the system is not used for a long time, take the batteries out of the remote controller.
 - When the remote controller is not used for a long time, the battery level begins to fade and the degradation of reception performance occurs within a year; however, replace both 2 batteries with new, size AAA.LR03 (alkaline).
 - The attached batteries are provided for the initial use of the system.
 - The stable period of the batteries may be short depending on the manufactured date of the air conditioner.
- Notes on remote controller
- Never expose the remote controller to direct sunlight.
 - Dust on the signal transmitter or receiver will reduce the sensitivity. Wipe off dust with soft cloth.
 - Signal transmission may be disabled if an electronic-starter-type fluorescent lamp (such as inverter-type lamps) is in the room. Consult the shop if that is the case.
 - If the remote controller signals happen to operate another appliance, move that appliance to somewhere else, or consult the service shop.

9

■ Open the front cover



8

Turn the breaker on

Turning on the breaker opens once and closes the flap. (This is a normal procedure.)

To set the clock

1. Press **⏸**.

"MON" is displayed.
"MON" and "⏸" blinks.

2. Press **⏸** to set the current day of the week.

3. Press **⏸**.

"⏸" blinks.

4. Press **⏸** to set the clock to the present time.

Holding down **⏸** or **⏸** button rapidly increases or decreases the time display.

5. Press **⏸**.

Always point the remote controller at the indoor unit when pressing the buttons when setting the indoor unit's internal clock.

NOTE

Note on setting the clock

If the indoor unit's internal clock is not set to the correct time, the WEEKLY TIMER will not operate punctually.

AUTO · DRY · COOL · HEAT · FAN Operation

The air conditioner operates with the operation mode of your choice. From the next time on, the air conditioner will operate with the same operation mode.

To start operation

1. Press **MODE** and select a operation mode.

Each pressing of the button advances the mode setting in sequence.

COOLING ONLY model → DRY → COOL → FAN → HEAT PUMP model → AUTO → DRY → COOL → HEAT → FAN

2. Press **ON/OFF**.

"ON/OFF" is displayed on the LCD.
The OPERATION lamp lights up.

To stop operation

Press **ON/OFF** again.

"ON/OFF" disappears from the LCD.
The OPERATION lamp goes off.

NOTE

Notes on each operation mode

HEAT

- Since this air conditioner heats the room by taking heat from outdoor air to indoors, the heating capacity becomes smaller in lower outdoor temperatures. If the heating effect is insufficient, it is recommended to use another heating appliance in addition to this air conditioner.
- The heat pump system heats the room by circulating hot air around all parts of the room. After the start of heating operation, it takes some time before the room gets warmer.
- In heating operation, frost may occur on the outdoor unit and lower the heating capacity. In that case, the system switches to defrosting operation, hot air does not flow out of indoor unit.
- This air conditioner cools the room by blowing the hot air in the room outside, so if the outside temperature is high, the performance of the air conditioner drops.

COOL

- This computer chip works to fit the room of humidity while maintaining the temperature as much as possible. It automatically adjusts the fan speed to remove humidity from the room.

DRY

- In AUTO operation, the system selects a temperature setting and an appropriate operation mode (COOL or HEAT) based on the room temperature at the start of the operation.

AUTO

- The system automatically resets setting at a regular interval to bring the room temperature to user-setting level.
- This mode is valid for fan only.

■ To change the temperature setting

Press **TEMP** or **TEMP**.

- The displayed items on the LCD will change whenever either one of the buttons is pressed.

MODE	COOL mode	HEAT mode	AUTO mode	DRY or FAN mode
TEMP	18 ~ 32°C	10 ~ 30°C	18 ~ 30°C	18 ~ 30°C

Press **▲** to raise the temperature and press **▼** to lower the temperature. The temperature setting is not variable.

■ Operating conditions

■ Recommended temperature setting

• For cooling: 26°C ~ 28°C

• For heating: 20°C ~ 24°C

■ Tips for saving energy

- Keeping the room too much.
- Keeping the temperature setting at a moderate level helps save energy.
- Cover windows with a blind or a curtain.
- Blocking sunlight and air from outdoors increases the cooling (heating) effect.
- Clogged air filters cause inefficient operation and waste energy. Clean them once in about every 2 weeks.

■ Notes on the operating conditions

- The air conditioner always consumes 15-30W of electricity even while it is not operating.
- If you are not going to use the air conditioner for a long period, for example in spring or autumn, turn the breaker off.
- Use the air conditioner in the following conditions.

MODE	Operating conditions	If operation is continued out of this range
COOL	Outdoor temperature: 10 to 43°C Indoor humidity: 18 to 95% Indoor temperature: 18 to 32°C	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A safety device may work to stop the operation. • Condensation may occur on the indoor unit and drip.
HEAT	Outdoor temperature: -15 to 24°C Indoor humidity: 10 to 90% Indoor temperature: 10 to 30°C	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A safety device may work to stop the operation. • Condensation may occur on the indoor unit and drip.
DRY	Indoor humidity: 80% max.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A safety device may work to stop the operation. • Condensation may occur on the indoor unit and drip.

- Operation outside this humidity or temperature range may cause a safety device to disable the system.

Adjusting the Airflow Direction and Rate

You can adjust the airflow direction to increase your comfort.

■ To start auto swing

Upper and lower airflow direction

Press **UP**.

- "Q" is displayed on the LCD.
- The flaps (horizontal blades) will begin to swing.

Right and left airflow direction

Press **RIGHT**.

- "Q" is displayed on the LCD.
- The louvers (vertical blades) will begin to swing.

The 3-D airflow direction

Press **UP** and **RIGHT**.

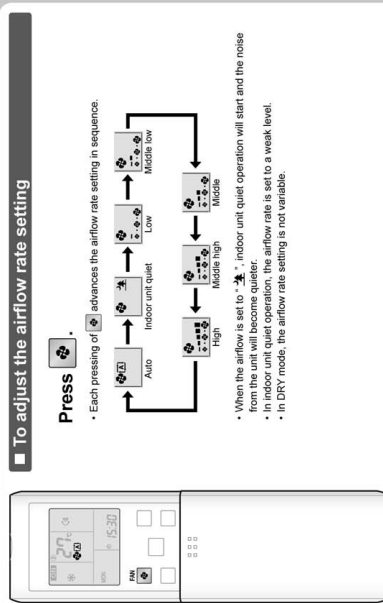
- "Q" and "Q" are displayed on the LCD.
- The flaps and louvers will move in turn.
- To cancel 3-D airflow, press either **UP** or **RIGHT** again. The flaps or louvers will stop moving.

■ To set the flaps or louvers at desired position

- This function is effective while flaps or louvers are in auto swing mode.

Press **UP** and **RIGHT** when the flaps or louvers have reached the desired position.

- In the 3-D airflow, the flaps and louvers move in turn.
- "Q" or "Q" disappears from the LCD.

**NOTE****■ Note on the angles of the flaps**

- The flaps swinging range depends on the operation mode. (See the figure.)

**■ Note on 3-D airflow**

- Using 3-D airflow circulates cold air, which tends to be collected at the bottom of the room, and hot air, which tends to collect near the ceiling, throughout the room, preventing areas of cold and hot developing.

■ Note on airflow rate setting

- At smaller airflow rates, the cooling (heating) effect is also smaller.

⚠ CAUTION

- Always use a remote controller to adjust the angles of the flaps and louvers. If you attempt to move it forcibly with hand when it is swinging, the mechanism may be broken.
- Always use a remote controller to adjust the louvers angles. Inside the air outlet, a fan is rotating at a high speed.

COMFORT AIRFLOW / INTELLIGENT EYE Operation

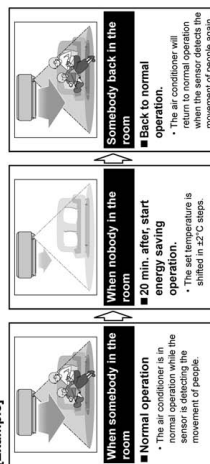
**■ COMFORT AIRFLOW operation**

The flow of air will be in the upward direction while in COOL operation and in the downward direction while in HEAT operation, which will provide a comfortable wind that will not come in direct contact with people.

**■ INTELLIGENT EYE operation**

"INTELLIGENT EYE" is the infrared sensor which detects the human movement. If nobody is in the room for more than 20 minutes, the operation automatically changes to energy saving operation.

[Example]

**INTELLIGENT EYE operation is useful for energy saving****■ Energy saving operation**

- If no presence detected in the room for 20 minutes, the energy saving operation will start.
- This operation changes the temperature -2°C in HEAT / +2°C in COOL / +2°C in DRY mode from set temperature.
- This operation decreases the airflow rate slightly in FAN mode only.


■ Combination COMFORT AIRFLOW and INTELLIGENT EYE operation


The air conditioner can go into operation with the COMFORT AIRFLOW and INTELLIGENT EYE functions combined.

POWERFUL Operation


POWERFUL operation quickly maximizes the cooling (heating) effect in any operation mode. You can get the maximum capacity.


■ To start POWERFUL operation

Press  during operation.

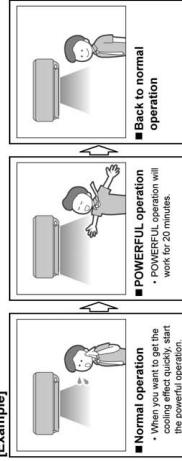
- POWERFUL operation ends in 20 minutes. Then the system automatically operates again with the previous settings which were used before POWERFUL operation.
-  is displayed on the LCD.

■ To cancel POWERFUL operation



Press  again.

-  disappears from the LCD.

[Example]






NOTE

- **Notes on POWERFUL operation**
 - When using POWERFUL operation, there are some functions which are not available.
 - POWERFUL operation cannot be used together with ECONO, COMFORT AIRFLOW or OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation.
 - Priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.
 - POWERFUL operation can only be set when the unit is running. Pressing  causes the settings to be canceled, and the  disappears from the LCD.
 - POWERFUL operation will not increase the capacity of the air conditioner if the air conditioner is already in operation with its maximum capacity demonstrated.
- **In COOL and HEAT mode**
 - To maximize the cooling (heating) effect, the capacity of outdoor unit must be increased and the airflow rate be fixed to the maximum setting.
 - The temperature and airflow settings are not variable.
- **In DRY mode**
 - The temperature setting is lowered by 2.5°C and the airflow rate is slightly increased.
- **In FAN mode**
 - The airflow rate is fixed to the maximum setting.
- **In AUTO mode**
 - To maximize the cooling (heating) effect, the capacity of outdoor unit must be increased and the airflow rate be fixed to the maximum setting.

17

■ To start operation


Press  and select the desired mode.

- Each time the  is pressed a different setting option is displayed on the LCD.
- By pressing  from the following ECONO, COMFORT AIRFLOW operation combined with INTELLIGENT EYE operation.

COMFORT AIRFLOW → INTELLIGENT EYE → Combination → blank → No Setting

- When the flaps (horizontal blades) are swinging, the operating as above will stop movement of them.

■ To cancel operation

Press  and select "blank" on the LCD.

NOTE

- **Notes on COMFORT AIRFLOW operation**
 - The flap position will change, preventing air from blowing directly on the occupants of the room.
 - POWERFUL operation and COMFORT AIRFLOW operation cannot be used at the same time.
 - Priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.
 - The airflow rate will be set to AUTO. If the upper and lower airflow direction is selected, the COMFORT AIRFLOW function will be canceled.
- **Notes on INTELLIGENT EYE operation**
 - Application range is as follows:
 - Detection range 30° (Side view)
 - Detection range 110° (Top view)
 - Sensor may not detect moving objects further than 7m away. (Check the application range)
 - Sensor detection sensitivity changes according to indoor unit location, the speed of passerby, temperature range, etc.
 - INTELLIGENT EYE operation will not work in the following cases:
 - INTELLIGENT EYE operation will not work in the following cases:
 - NIGHT SET MODE (22:00-05:00) will not go on during use of INTELLIGENT EYE operation.
 - **Notes on combination of COMFORT AIRFLOW operation and INTELLIGENT EYE operation**
 - The airflow rate will be set to AUTO. If the upper and lower airflow direction is selected, the COMFORT AIRFLOW operation will be canceled.
 - Priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.

CAUTION

- Do not place large objects near the sensor.
- Do not place heating units or humidifiers near the sensor's detection area. This sensor can select undesirable objects.
- Do not hit or violently push the INTELLIGENT EYE sensor. This can lead to damage and malfunction.

16

OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET Operation

OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation lowers the noise level of the outdoor unit by changing the frequency and fan speed on the outdoor unit. This function is convenient during the night.

■ To start OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation

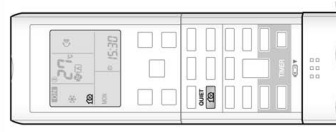
Press **OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET**.

• **OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET** is displayed on the LCD.

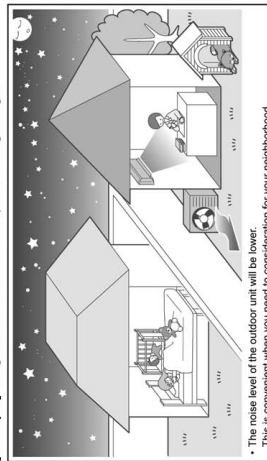
■ To cancel OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation

Press **OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET** again.

• **OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET** disappears from the LCD.



[Example] Using the OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation during the night.



• The noise level of the outdoor unit will be lower.
This is convenient when you need to consider for your neighborhood.

NOTE

- **Notes on OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation**
 - If using a multi system, this function will work only when the OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation is set on all operated indoor units. However, if using priority room setting, refer to "Note for multi system" **6-2-2-3**.
 - This function is available in COOL, HEAT, and AUTO mode.
 - This is not available in FAN and DRY mode.
 - Even the operation is stopped using the remote controller or the main unit ON/OFF switch when using OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation, priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.
 - Even the operation is stopped using the remote controller or the main unit ON/OFF switch when using OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation, priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.
 - **OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET** will remain on the remote controller display.
 - OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation will drop neither the frequency nor fan speed if they have been already dropped low enough.

18

ECONO Operation

ECONO operation is a function which enables efficient operation by limiting the maximum power consumption value. This function is useful for cases in which attention should be paid to ensure a circuit breaker will not trip when the product runs alongside other appliances.

■ To start ECONO operation

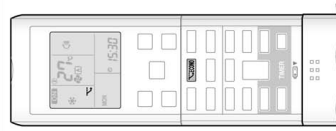
Press **ECONO** during operation.

• **ECONO** is displayed on the LCD.

■ To cancel ECONO operation

Press **ECONO** again.

• **ECONO** disappears from the LCD.



[Example]

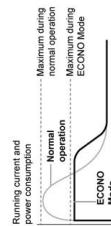
Normal operation

ECONO operation

- In case the air conditioner and other appliances which require high power are used at same time, a circuit breaker may trip if the air conditioner operates with its maximum capacity.

- The maximum power consumption of the air conditioner is limited by using ECONO operation. The circuit breaker will hardly trip even if the air conditioner and other appliances are used at same time.

- This diagram is a representation for illustrative purposes only. The maximum running current and power consumption of the air conditioner in ECONO mode vary with the connecting outdoor unit.



From start up until set temperature is reached

NOTE

- **Notes on ECONO operation**
 - ECONO operation can only be set when the unit is running. Pressing **POWER** causes the settings to be canceled, and the **ECONO** disappears from the LCD.
 - ECONO operation is a function which enables efficient operation by limiting the power consumption of the outdoor unit (operating current and power consumption).
 - ECONO operation functions in AUTO, COOL, DRY, and HEAT modes.
 - POWERFUL and ECONO operation cannot be used at the same time. Priority is given to the function of whichever button is pressed last.
 - If the level of power consumption is already low, ECONO operation will not drop the power consumption.

19

OFF TIMER Operation



Timer functions are useful for automatically switching the air conditioner on or off at night or in the morning. You can also use OFF TIMER and ON TIMER in combination.

To use OFF-TIMER operation

- Check that the clock is correct. If not, set the clock to the present time. **▶ Page 19**

1. Press OFF.

- OFF is displayed on the LCD.
- OFF blinks.
- • • and day of the week disappear from the LCD.

2. Press until the time setting reaches the point you like.

- Each pressing of either button increases or decreases the time setting by 10 minutes. Holding down either button changes the time setting rapidly.

3. Press OFF again.

- • • and setting time are displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp lights up.



To cancel OFF TIMER operation

Press CANCEL.

- • • and setting time disappear from the LCD.
- • • and day of the week are displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp goes off.

NOTE

- Notes on TIMER operation**
 - When TIMER is set, the present time is not displayed.
 - Once you set ON/OFF TIMER, the time setting is kept in the memory. The memory is cancelled when remote controller batteries are replaced.
 - When operating the unit via the ON/OFF timer, the actual length of operation may vary from the time entered by the user. (Maximum approx. 10 minutes)
- NIGHT SET MODE**
 - When the OFF TIMER is set, the air conditioner automatically adjusts the temperature setting (0.5°C up in COOL, 2.0°C down in HEAT) to suit the night temperature.

ON TIMER Operation



Check that the clock is correct. If not, set the clock to the present time. **▶ Page 19**

1. Press ON.

- ON is displayed on the LCD.
- ON blinks.
- • • and day of the week disappear from the LCD.

2. Press until the time setting reaches the point you like.

- Each pressing of either button increases or decreases the time setting by 10 minutes. Holding down either button changes the setting rapidly.

3. Press ON again.

- • • and setting time are displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp lights up.



To cancel ON TIMER operation

Press CANCEL.

- • • and setting time disappear from the LCD.
- • • and day of the week are displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp goes off.

To combine ON TIMER and OFF TIMER

- A sample setting for combining the 2 timers is shown below.



NOTE

- In the following cases, set the timer again.**
 - After a breaker has turned off.
 - After a power outage.
 - After changing batteries in the remote controller.

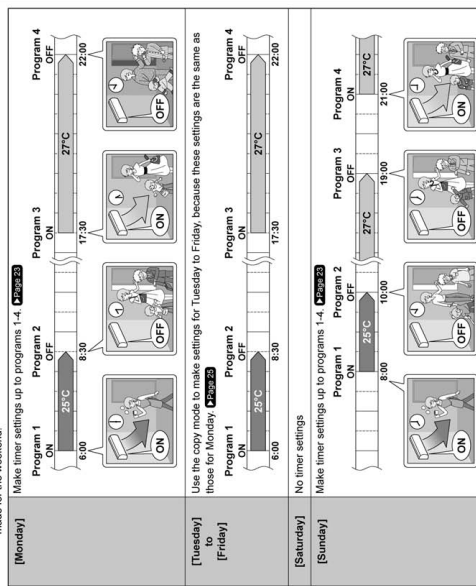


WEEKLY TIMER Operation

Up to 4 timer settings can be saved for each day of the week. It is convenient if the WEEKLY TIMER is set according to the family's life style.

Using in these cases of WEEKLY TIMER

Example: The same timer settings are made for the week from Monday through Friday while different timer settings are made for the weekend.



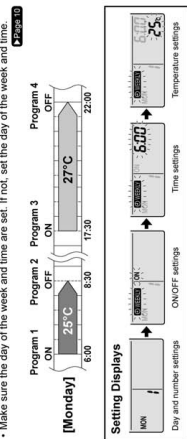
- Up to 4 reservations per day and 28 reservations per week can be set in the WEEKLY TIMER. The effective use of the copy mode ensures ease of making reservations.
- The copy mode makes it possible to schedule operating mode and set temperature changes. Furthermore, by using OFF-OFF-OFF settings, only the turn off time of each day can be set. This will turn off the air conditioner automatically if the user forgets to turn it off.



WEEKLY TIMER Operation

To use WEEKLY TIMER operation

Setting mode
• Make sure the day of the week and time are set. If not, set the day of the week and time.



1. Press

- The day of the week and the reservation number of the current day will be displayed.
- 1 to 4 settings can be made per day.

2. Press to select the desired day of the week and reservation number.

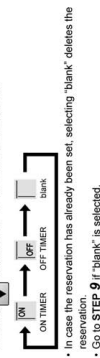
- Pressing changes the reservation number and the day of the week.

3. Press NEXT

- The day of the week and reservation number will be set.
- OFF-OFF-OFF and ON blink.

4. Press to select the desired mode.

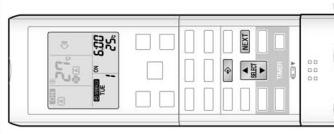
- Pressing changes "ON" or "OFF" setting in sequence.



- In case the reservation has already been set, selecting "blank" deletes the reservation.
- Go to STEP 9 if "blank" is selected.

5. Press NEXT

- The ON/OFF TIMER mode will be set.
- OFF-OFF-OFF and the time blink.



6. Press **SELECT** to select the desired time.

- The time can be set between 0:00 and 23:59 in 10 minute intervals.
- To return to the ON/OFF TIMER mode setting, press **BACK**.
- Go to STEP 9 when setting the OFF TIMER.

7. Press **NEXT**.

- The time will be set.
- **ON/OFF** and the temperature blink.

8. Press **SELECT** to select the desired temperature.

- The temperature can be set between 10°C and 32°C.
- Heating: The unit operates at 1°C even if it is set at 10 to 17°C. Heating will start at 18°C and stop at 32°C.
- Cooling: The unit operates at 32°C even if it is set at 10 to 17°C. Cooling will start at 18°C and stop at 32°C.
- To return to the time setting, press **BACK**.
- The set temperature is only displayed when the mode setting is on.

9. Press **NEXT**.

- The temperature will be set and go to the next reservation setting.
- To continue further settings, repeat the procedure from STEP 4.

10. Press **SELECT** to complete the setting.

- Be sure to direct the remote controller toward the indoor unit and check for a receiving signal during the operation.
- **ON/OFF** is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.
- The TIMER lamp lights up.



Display

- A reservation made once can be easily copied and the same settings used for another day of the week. Refer to **Copy mode**. **ON/OFF**

NOTE

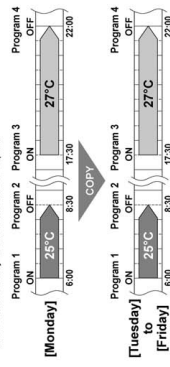
- **Notes on WEEKLY TIMER operation**
 - Do not forget to set the clock on the remote controller first. **ON/OFF**
 - The day of the week ON/OFF TIMER mode, time and set temperature (only for ON TIMER mode) can be set with WEEKLY TIMER. When the day of the week is set, the ON/OFF TIMER operation cannot be used at the same time. The ON/OFF TIMER operation has priority if it is set while WEEKLY TIMER is still active. The WEEKLY TIMER will go into standby state, and **ON/OFF** will disappear from the LCD. When ON/OFF TIMER is up, the WEEKLY TIMER will automatically become active.
 - Only the time and set temperature set with the WEEKLY TIMER are sent with the operation mode, the airflow rate and the airflow direction ahead of time.
 - Shutting the power off, power failure, and other similar events will render operation of the indoor unit's internal clock inaccurate. Reset the clock. **ON/OFF**
 - The **BACK** can be used only for the time and temperature settings. It cannot be used to go back to the reservation number.

WEEKLY TIMER Operation



Copy mode

- A reservation made once can be copied to another day of the week. The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.



Setting Displays



1. Press **SELECT**.

2. Press **SELECT** to confirm the day of the week to be copied.

3. Press **COPY**.

- The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.

4. Press **SELECT** to select the destination day of the week.

5. Press **COPY**.

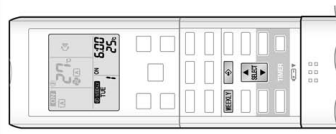
- The reservation will be copied to the selected day of the week. The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.
- To continue copying the settings to other days of the week, repeat STEP 4 and STEP 5.

6. Press **SELECT** to complete the setting.

- **ON/OFF** is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.

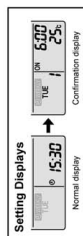
NOTE

- **Note on COPY MODE**
 - The entire reservation of the source day of the week is copied in the copy mode.
 - In case of making a reservation change for any day of the week immediately after copying the content of weekly reservations, press **ON/OFF** to return to the normal display. **ON/OFF**



■ Confirming a reservation

- The reservation can be confirmed.



1. Press **ON**.

- The day of the week and the reservation number of the current day will be displayed.

2. Press **SELECT** to select the day of the week and the reservation number to be confirmed.

- Pressing **SELECT** displays the reservation details.
- To change the confirmed reserved settings, select the reservation number and press **NEXT**.
The mode is switched to setting mode. Go to **Setting mode STEP 4** **Page 23**

3. Press **ON** to exit confirming mode.

- **ON** is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.
- The TIMER lamp lights up.



Display

■ To deactivate WEEKLY TIMER operation

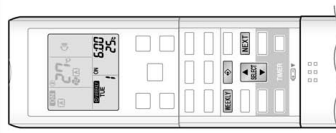
Press **WEEKLY** while **ON WEEKLY** is displayed on the LCD.

- The **ON** will disappear from the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp goes off.
- To reactivate the WEEKLY TIMER operation, press **WEEKLY** again.
- If a reservation deactivated with **WEEKLY** is activated once again, the last reservation mode will be used.

26



WEEKLY TIMER Operation



■ To delete reservations

The individual reservation

1. Press **ON**.
• The day of the week and the reservation number will be displayed.
2. Press **SELECT** to select the day of the week and the reservation number to be deleted.

3. Press **NEXT**.

- **ON** and "ON" or "OFF" blink.

4. Press **ON** and select "blank".

- Pressing **ON** changes ON/OFF TIMER mode.
- The reservation will be no setting with selecting "blank".



5. Press **NEXT**.

- The selected reservation will be deleted.

6. Press **ON**.

- If there are still other reservations, WEEKLY TIMER operation will be activated.

The reservations for each day of the week

- This function can be used for deleting reservations for each day of the week.
- It can be used while confirming or setting reservations.

1. Press **ON** to select the day of the week to be deleted.

2. Hold **WEEKLY** for 5 seconds.

- The reservation of the selected day of the week will be deleted.

All reservations

Hold **WEEKLY** for 5 seconds while normal display.

- Be sure to direct the remote controller toward the indoor unit and check for a receiving tone.
- The reservation of the selected day of the week will be deleted.
- All reservations will be deleted.

27

Note for Multi System

Multi system has one outdoor unit connected to multiple indoor units.

■ Selecting the operation mode

With the priority room setting present but inactive or not present

When more than one indoor unit is operating, priority is given to the first unit that was turned on.
In this case, set the unit that are turned on later to the same operation mode as the first unit.
Otherwise, they will enter the standby state, and the operation lamp will flash; this does not indicate malfunction.

NOTE

■ Notes on operation mode for multi system

- COOL, DRY and FAN mode may be used at the same time.
- AUTO mode automatically selects COOL mode or HEAT mode based on the room temperature.
- Therefore, AUTO mode is available when selecting the same operation mode as that of the room with the first unit to be turned on.

CAUTION

Normally, this operation mode in the room where the unit is first run is given priority, but the following situations are exceptions, so please keep this in mind.
If the operation mode of the first room is FAN mode, then using HEAT mode in any room after this will give priority to HEAT. In this situation, the air conditioner running in FAN mode will go on standby, and the operation lamp will flash.

With the priority room setting active.

Refer to 'Priority room setting' on the next page.

■ NIGHT QUIET mode (Available only for COOL operation)

NIGHT QUIET mode requires initial programming during installation. Please consult your retailer or dealer for assistance.
NIGHT QUIET mode reduces the operation noise of the outdoor unit during the nighttime hours to prevent annoyance to neighbors.

- The NIGHT QUIET mode is activated when the temperature drops 5°C or more below the highest temperature recorded that day.
- NIGHT QUIET mode reduces slightly the cooling efficiency of the unit.

■ OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation

Refer to 'OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation' on page 30.

With the priority room setting present but inactive or not present.

When using the OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation feature with the Multi system, set all indoor units to OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation using their remote controllers.
When clearing OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation, clear one of the operating indoor units using their remote controller. However, OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation display remains on the remote controller for other rooms.
We recommend you release all rooms using their remote controllers.

With the priority room setting active.

Refer to 'Priority room setting' on the next page.

28

Note for Multi System

■ COOL / HEAT mode lock

The COOL / HEAT mode lock requires initial programming during installation. Please consult your authorized dealer for assistance. The COOL / HEAT mode lock sets the unit forcibly to either COOL or HEAT mode. This function is convenient when you wish to set all indoor units connected to the multi system to the same operation mode.

■ Priority room setting

The priority room setting requires initial programming during installation. Please consult your authorized dealer for assistance. The room designated as the priority room takes priority in the following situations.

Operation mode priority

- As the operation mode of the priority room takes precedence, the user can select a different operation mode from other rooms.

[Example]
• Room A is the priority room in the examples.

- When COOL mode is selected in room A while operating the following modes in room B, C and D :

Operation mode in room B, C and D	Status of room A
COOL or DRY or FAN	Current operation mode maintained
HEAT	The unit enters standby mode. Operation resumes when the room A unit stops operating.
AUTO	If the unit is set to COOL mode, operation continues. If the unit is set to HEAT mode, it enters standby mode. Operation resumes when the room A unit stops operating.

Priority when POWERFUL operation is used

[Example]

- Room A is the priority room in the examples.
- The indoor units in rooms A, B, C and D are all operating. If the unit in room A enters POWERFUL operation, operation becomes more concentrated in room A. In such a case, the COOL (HEAT) efficiency of the units in room B, C and D may be slightly reduced.

Priority when using OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation

[Example]

- Room A is the priority room in the examples.
- Just by setting the unit in room A to QUIET operation, the air conditioner starts OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation. You don't have to set all the operated indoor units to QUIET operation.

29

Care and Cleaning

■ Quick reference

How to open / close the front panel

- Hold the front panel by the panel tabs on the 2 sides and open it.
- Press the front panel at both sides and the center to close it.

Cleaning parts

Front panel

- Wipe it with dry soft cloth.
- **If bothered by dirt**
Refer to **▶Page 33**

Air filter

- Vacuum dust or wash filter.
- **Once every 2 weeks**
Refer to **▶Page 32**

Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter

- Vacuum dust or replace the filter.
- **[Cleaning]**
Once every 6 months
Refer to **▶Page 33**
- **[Replacement]**
Once every 3 years
Refer to **▶Page 33**

Indoor unit, Outdoor unit and Remote controller

- Wipe them with soft cloth.
- **If bothered by dirt**

Notes on cleaning

- For cleaning, do not use the materials as follows.
 - Hot water above 40°C.
 - Benzine, gasoline, thinner, other volatile oils.
 - Polishing compound.
 - Scrubbing brushes, other hard stuff.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before cleaning, be sure to stop the operation and turn the breaker off.
- Do not touch the metal parts of the indoor unit. If you touch those parts, this may cause an injury.

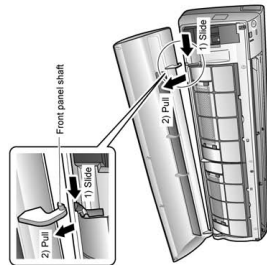
30

Care and Cleaning

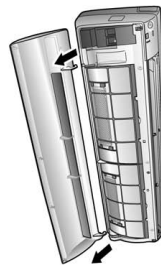
■ Front panel

1. Remove the front panel.

- Open the front panel.
- Slide the front panel to either the left or right and disconnect the rotation dowel on one side.



- Disconnect the front panel shaft on the other side in the same manner.

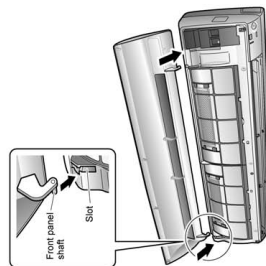


2. Clean the front panel.

- Wipe it with a soft cloth soaked in water.
- Only neutral detergent may be used.
- After cleaning, dry the front panel with dry soft cloth, dry it up in the shade after washing.

3. Attach the front panel.

- Align the front panel shaft on the left and right of the front panel with the slots, then push them all the way in.



- Close the front panel slowly. (Press the panel at both sides and the center.)

⚠ CAUTION

- When removing or attaching the front panel, use a robust and stable stool and watch your steps carefully.
- When removing or attaching the front panel, support the panel securely with hand to prevent it from falling.
- After cleaning, make sure that the front panel is securely fixed.

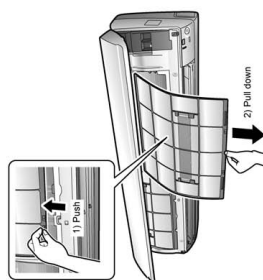
31

Care and Cleaning

■ Air filter

1. Pull out the air filters.

- Open the front panel.
- Push a little upwards the filter tab at the center of each air filter, then pull it down.



2. Wash the air filters with water or clean them with vacuum cleaner.

- It is recommended to clean the air filters every 2 weeks.



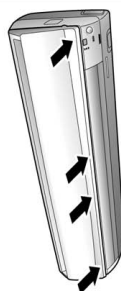
If the dust does not come off easily

- Wash the air filters with neutral detergent thinned with lukewarm water, then dry them up in the shade.
- Be sure to remove the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter. Refer to "Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter" on the next page.



3. Set the filters as they were and close the front panel.

- Press the front panel at both sides and the center.



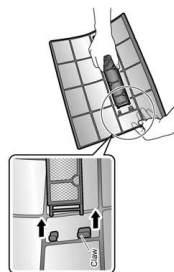
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not touch the aluminum fins by bare hand at the time of dismounting or mounting the filter.

■ Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter

1. Take off the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter.

- Open the front panel and pull out the air filters.
- Hold the recessed parts of the frame and unhook the 4 claws.



2. Clean or replace the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter.

[Maintenance]

- 2-1 Vacuum dusts, and soak in lukewarm water or water for about 10 to 15 minutes if dirt is heavy.
- Do not remove the filter from frame when washing with water.



2-2 After washing, shake off remaining water and dry in the shade.

- Since the material is made out of polyester, do not wring out the filter when removing water from it.

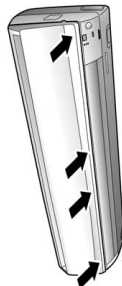
[Replacement] Remove the tabs on the filter frame and replace with a new filter.



- Do not throw away the filter frame. Reuse the filter frame to replace the titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter.
- Dispose of the old filter as non-flammable waste.

3. Set the filters as they were and close the front panel.

- Press the front panel at both sides and the center.



NOTE

- Operation with dirty filters:
 - cannot purify the air,
 - cannot clean the air,
 - results in poor heating or cooling,
 - may cause odour.
- Dispose of old filters as non-flammable waste.
- To order titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter contact to the service shop there you bought the air conditioner.

Item	Part No.
Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter (without frame) 1 set	KAF97046

■ Check the units

- Check that the base, stand and other fittings of the outdoor unit are not decayed or corroded.
- Check that nothing blocks the air inlets and the outlets of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.
- Check that the drain comes smoothly out of the drain hose during COOL or DRY operation.
 - If no drain water is seen, water may be leaking from the indoor unit. Stop operation and consult the service shop if this is the case.

■ Before a long idle period

1. Operate the "FAN only" for several hours on a fine day to dry out the inside.
 - Press **MODE** and select **FAN** operation.
 - Press **ON/OFF** and start operation.

2. After operation stops, turn off the breaker for the room air conditioner.

3. Clean the air filters and set them again.

4. Take out batteries from the remote controller.

- When a multi outdoor unit is connected, make sure the heating operation is not used at the other room before you use the fan operation. **▶ 203-23**

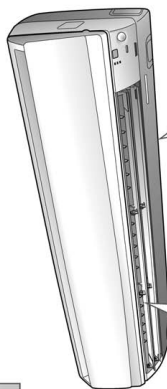
34

Troubleshooting

■ These cases are not troubles.

- The following cases are not air conditioner troubles but have some reasons. You may just continue using it.

Indoor unit



The flaps does not start swing immediately.

- The air conditioner is adjusting the flap position. The flap will start moving soon.

The heating operation stops suddenly and a flowing sound is heard.

- The system is taking away the frost on the outdoor unit. You should wait for about 4 to 12 minutes.

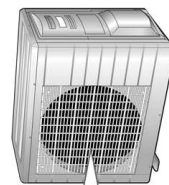
Operation does not start soon.

- When ON/OFF button was pressed soon after operation was stopped.
- When the mode was reselected.
 - When it is pressed again immediately, you should wait for about 3 minutes.

Outdoor unit

The outdoor unit emits water or steam.

- In HEAT mode
 - The outdoor unit outdoor unit melts into water or steam when the air conditioner is in defrost operation.
- In COOL or DRY mode
 - Moisture in the air condenses into water on the cool surface of outdoor unit piping and drips.



A sound is heard.

- A sound like a flow of water
 - This sound is generated because the refrigerant in the air conditioner is flowing.
 - This is a normal sound and the water is the air conditioner is running. When the water is pumped out from the air conditioner in cooling or drying operation, the refrigerant flows in the air conditioner even if the air conditioner is not working when the indoor units in other rooms are in operation.

■ Blowing sound

- This sound is generated when the flow of the refrigerant in the air conditioner is switched over.

■ Pinging sound

- This sound is generated when the size of the air conditioner slightly expands or shrinks as a result of temperature changes.

■ Whistling sound

- This sound is generated when refrigerant flows during defrosting operation.

35

* Troubleshooting measures are classified into the following two types on a remedial basis.
Take an appropriate measure according to the symptom.

Not trouble

- These cases are not troubles.

Check

- Please check again before calling a repair person.

The air conditioner does not operate. (OPERATION lamp is off.)

- Hasn't a breaker turned off or a fuse blown?
- Are batteries set in the remote controller?
- Is the timer setting correct?



Hot air does not flow out soon after the start of heating operation.

- The air conditioner is warming up. You should wait for 1 to 4 minutes. (This system is designed to start discharging air only after it has reached a certain temperature.)



Operation stopped suddenly. (OPERATION lamp is on.)

- For system protection, the air conditioner may stop operating on a sudden large voltage fluctuation. It automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes.



Operation stopped suddenly. (OPERATION lamp flashes.)

- Are the air filters clean?
- Is there anything to block the air inlet or the outlet of the indoor and the outdoor units?
- Clean the air filters or take air obstacles away and turn the breaker off. Then turn it on again and try operating the air conditioner. If the OPERATION lamp still flashes, call the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.
- Are operation modes all the same for indoor units connected to outdoor units in the multi system?

If not, set all indoor units to the same operation mode and confirm that the lamps flash.
Moreover, when the operation mode is in "AUTO", set all indoor units to the same operation mode of "COOL", "HEAT" or "FAN".
For a moment and check again that the lamps are normal. If the lamps stop flashing after the above steps, there is no malfunction. **2-2-2-2-3**



Mist comes out of the indoor unit.

- This happens when the air in the room is cooled into mist by the cold airflow during COOL operation.
This is because the air in the room is cooled by the heat exchanger and becomes mist during defrost operation.



Troubleshooting

Cooling (Heating) effect is poor.

- Are the air filters clean?
- Is there anything to block the air inlet or the outlet of the indoor and the outdoor units?
- Is the temperature setting appropriate?
- Are the indoor and outdoor units connected properly?
- Are the airflow rate and the airflow direction set appropriately?



Remote controller does not work properly.

- No remote controller signals are displayed.
 - The remote controller sensitivity is low.
 - The display is low in contrast or blacked out.
 - The display runs out of control.
- The batteries are dying and the remote controller is malfunctioning. Replace all the batteries with new, size AAA/LR03 (alkaline). For details, refer to "To set the batteries" of this manual. **2-2-2-2-3**



The operation mode display of the remote controller is unusual

- Heating cannot be selected, even though the unit is heat pump model.
- Slide the DIP switch to the left as shown in the illustration so that the HEAT mode can be selected with the MODE selector button.
- The LCD displays AUTO and HEAT operation modes.
- Slide the DIP switch to the right as shown in the illustration so that the AUTO and HEAT mode displays will disappear.



The ON/OFF TIMER does not operate according to the settings.

- Check if the ON/OFF TIMER and the WEEKLY TIMER are set to the same time.
- Change or deactivate the settings in the WEEKLY TIMER. **2-2-2-2-3**



The indoor unit gives out odour.

- This happens when smells of the room, furniture, or cigarettes are absorbed into the unit and discharged with the airflow.
- (If this happens, we recommend you to have the indoor unit washed by a technician. Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.)



The outdoor fan rotates while the air conditioner is not in operation.

- After operation is stopped
- The outdoor fan keeps rotating for another 60 seconds for system protection.
- While the air conditioner is not in operation
- When the outdoor temperature is very high, the outdoor fan starts rotating for system protection.



An abnormal functioning happens during operation.

- The air conditioner may malfunction with lightning or radio waves. Turn the breaker off, turn it on again and try operating the air conditioner with the remote controller.



■ Call the service shop immediately

⚠ WARNING

- When an abnormality (such as a burning smell) occurs, stop operation and turn the breaker off.
- Continued operation in an abnormal condition may result in troubles, electric shocks or fire.
- Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.
- Do not attempt to repair or modify the air conditioner by yourself.
- Incorrect work may result in electric shocks or fire.
- Consult the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.

If one of the following symptoms takes place, call the service shop immediately.

- The power cord is abnormally hot or damaged.
- An abnormal sound is heard during operation.
- The safety breaker, a fuse, or the earth leakage breaker cuts off the operation frequently.
- A switch or a button often fails to work properly.
- There is a burning smell.
- Water leaks from the indoor unit.

Turn the breaker off and call the service shop.



■ After a power failure

- The air conditioner automatically resumes operation in about 3 minutes. You should just wait for a while.

■ Lightning

- If lightning may strike the neighbouring area, stop operation and turn the breaker off for system protection.

■ Disposal requirements

- Disposal of the unit, treatment of the refrigerant, oil and eventual other parts, should be done in accordance with the relevant local and national regulations.

■ We recommend periodical maintenance

- In certain operating conditions, the inside of the air conditioner may get foul after several seasons of use, resulting in poor performance. It is recommended to have periodical maintenance by a specialist aside from regular cleaning by the user.
- For specialist maintenance, contact the service shop where you bought the air conditioner.
- The maintenance cost must be born by the user.

Miele

Operating and installation instructions



Oven

H 4700 B, H 4710 B


H 4800 B, H 4810 B

To avoid the risk of accidents or damage to the appliance, it is **essential** to read these instructions before it is installed and used for the first time.







en - AU, NZ

M.-Nr. 07 856 420

Contents

Warning and Safety instructions	6
Caring for the environment	11
Description of the appliance	12
H 4700 B, H 4710 B, H 4800 B, H 4810 B	12
Features	13
Oven controls	13
Safety features	13
Cooling fan	13
Vented oven door	13
Energy-saving features	13
Rapid heat-up function	13
PerfectClean treated surfaces	13
Catalytic enamelled surfaces	13
Accessories	14
Baking tray, universal tray and rack with anti-tip safety notches	14
FlexiClip telescopic runners	15
Fitting the FlexiClip telescopic runners	15
Remove FlexiClip telescopic runners	16
Oven controls	17
Function selector	17
Temperature selector	17
Temperature indicator light 	17
Functions	18
Before using for the first time	20
To set the time of day for the first time	20
Cleaning and heating up for the first time	20
Clock timer	22
Sensors	22
Operation	22
Time displays	23
Changing the time of day	23
To change the audible tone	24
Using the minute minder  function	24
To set the minute minder	25
To change the time set for the minute minder	25
To cancel the time set for the minute minder	25

Contents

Operation	26
Using the oven	26
Pre-heating	26
Switching on and off automatically	27
Entering a cooking duration	27
To enter the duration and finish time	28
At the end of the duration	29
To check and change the duration	29
To delete the duration	29
Baking tips	30
Bakeware	30
Baking paper	30
Universal tray	30
Rectangular tins	30
Notes about the charts	31
Temperature, baking duration	31
Shelf level	31
Frozen food	31
Baking chart	32
Fan Plus 	32
Conventional 	33
Intensive Bake 	34
Roasting tips	35
Useful tips	36
Roasting chart	37
Notes on low temperature cooking	38
Procedure for low temperature cooking	38
Cooking times/Core temperatures	39
Grilling tips	40
Preparing food for grilling	42
Grilling	42
Useful tips	42
Fan Grilling guide (Fan Grill )	43
Grilling guide (Grill  / Economy Grill )	44
Defrost	45
Bottling	46

Warning and Safety instructions

- ▲ This oven is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they are supervised whilst using it or have been given instruction concerning its use by a person responsible for their safety.

Safety with children

- ▲ This appliance is not a toy! To prevent the risk of injury or damage, do not let children play with the appliance or its controls.
- ▲ Older children may only use the oven when its operation has been clearly explained to them and they are able to use it safely, recognising the dangers of misuse.
- ▲ Great care should be taken to ensure that children do not touch the appliance when it is being used. Children's skin is far more sensitive to high temperatures than that of adults. External parts of the oven such as the door glass, control panel and the vent become quite hot.
- ▲ Warning
To avoid burns, young children should be kept away.

This appliance conforms to current safety requirements. Inappropriate use can, however, lead to personal injury and damage to property.

To avoid the risk of accidents and damage to the appliance, please read these instructions carefully before using it for the first time. They contain important notes on installation, safety, use and maintenance.

Keep these instructions in a safe place and ensure that new users are familiar with the content. Pass them on to any future owner.

Correct application

- ▲ This oven is designed for domestic use and for use in similar environments by guests in hotel or motel rooms, bed & breakfasts and other typical living quarters. This does not include common/shared facilities or commercial facilities within hotels, motels or bed & breakfasts.
- ▲ This oven is designed to bake, roast, grill, cook, defrost, dry fruit etc. Any other usage is at the owner's risk. Miele cannot be held liable for damage resulting from incorrect or improper use or operation.

6

Contents

Cooking ready meals	47
Cleaning and care	48
Appliance front	48
Accessories	49
Baking tray, universal tray, anti-splash insert	49
Rack, runners	49
FlexiClip telescopic runners	49
Lubricating the FlexiClip telescopic runners	50
Oven interior	51
Seal and inside of the oven door	51
PerfectClean	52
Catalytic enamel surfaces	54
To remove the oven door	55
To dismantle the oven door	56
To refit the door	58
To remove the FlexiClip telescopic runners	59
To remove the shelf runners	59
To remove the back panel	60
To lower the top heat/grill element	60
Problem solving guide	61
After sales service and warranty	63
Optional accessories	64
Electrical connection	66
Building-in diagrams	67
Appliance dimensions and unit cut-out	67
Front dimensions	68
Installing the oven	69

5

Warning and Safety instructions

Technical safety

- ▲ Installation, maintenance and repairs may only be carried out by a suitably qualified and competent person in strict accordance with current national and local safety regulations. Repairs and other work by unqualified persons could be dangerous. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for unauthorised work.
- ▲ Before installation, check the appliance for visible signs of damage. Do not install and use a damaged appliance. A damaged appliance could be dangerous.
- ▲ The electrical safety of this appliance can only be guaranteed when continuity is complete between it and an effective earthing system. It is most important that this basic safety requirement is present and tested regularly and, where there is any doubt, the household wiring system should be inspected by a qualified electrician. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for the consequences of an inadequate earthing system (e.g. electric shock).
- ▲ Before connecting the appliance, make sure that the connection data on the data plate (voltage and connected load) match the mains electricity supply.
This data must correspond in order to avoid the risk of damage to the appliance. Consult a competent person if in doubt.
- ▲ Do not connect the appliance to the mains electricity supply by a multi-socket unit or an extension lead. These do not guarantee the required safety of the appliance (e.g. danger of overheating).
- ▲ For safety reasons, this appliance may only be used when it has been built in.
- ▲ Never open the housing of the appliance.
Tampering with electrical connections or components and mechanical parts is highly dangerous to the user and can cause operational faults.
- ▲ While the appliance is under guarantee, repairs should only be undertaken by a service technician authorised by the manufacturer. Otherwise the warranty will be invalidated.

7

Warning and Safety instructions

- ▲ During installation, maintenance and repair work, the appliance must be disconnected from the mains electricity supply. It is only completely isolated from the electricity supply when:
 - the mains fuse is disconnected,
 - the screw-out fuse is removed (in countries where this is applicable),
 - it is switched off at the isolator.
 Ensure that current is not supplied to the appliance until after maintenance or repair work has been carried out.
- ▲ Faulty components must only be replaced by genuine Miele original spare parts. The manufacturer can only guarantee the safety of the appliance when Miele replacement parts are used.
- ▲ If the supply cord is damaged, it must be replaced by a Miele approved service technician to avoid a hazard.
- ▲ This appliance may only be used in mobile installations such as ships, caravans, aircraft etc. if a risk assessment of the installation has been carried out by a suitably qualified engineer.
- ▲ In areas which may be subject to infestation by cockroaches or other vermin, pay particular attention to keeping the appliance and its surroundings in a clean condition at all times. Any damage which may be caused by cockroaches or other vermin will not be covered by the warranty.

Correct use

- Caution. Danger of burning.
High temperatures are produced by the oven and the appliance becomes hot. Care should be taken to avoid touching heating elements inside the oven.
- ▲ Use oven gloves when placing food in the oven, turning or removing it and when adjusting oven shelves etc. in a hot oven. Be very careful that you do not burn yourself on the top heating / grill element.
 - ▲ Never leave the appliance unattended when cooking with oil or fats, as these are a fire hazard if allowed to overheat.
 - ▲ Do not exceed the recommended grilling times when using the "Grill [icon]", "Economy Grill [icon]" and "Fan Grill [icon]" functions. Excessively long grilling times can lead to food drying out and burning, or could even cause it to catch fire.
 - ▲ Do not use the "Grill [icon]", "Economy Grill [icon]" or "Fan Grill [icon]" to finish baking part-cooked rolls or bread or to dry flowers or herbs. Fire hazard. Use "Fan Plus [icon]" or "Conventional [icon]" instead.

8

Warning and Safety instructions

- ▲ If using alcohol in your recipes, high temperatures can cause the alcohol to vaporise and even to ignite on the hot heating elements. Alcohol should be burnt off before the dish is placed in the oven to avoid this danger.
 - ▲ Cover any food which is left in the oven to be kept hot. Any moisture in the food could lead to corrosion damage in the oven. This also prevents the food from drying out.
 - ▲ If you wish to complete a cooking process using the residual heat in the oven, leave the function selector at the position set and turn the temperature selector to the lowest setting. Do not switch the appliance off until the food has been removed. Increased moisture in the oven could cause condensation to form which could lead to
 - corrosion in the oven compartment.
 - damage to the control panel, worktop and surrounding kitchen furniture.
 - ▲ Do not line the floor of the oven with aluminium foil when using "Conventional Bake" / "Bottom Heat" / "Intensive Bake" / "Rapid Heat-up". This would cause a build-up of heat which could cause damage to the floor of the oven.
- For this reason, do not place a dish, tin or baking tray directly on the oven floor.
- If using a tray made by a different manufacturer, make sure that there is a gap of at least 6 cm between the bottom of the tray and the floor of the oven.

9

Warning and Safety instructions

- ▲ Do not heat up unopened tins or jars of food in the oven. Pressure can build up and they may explode, resulting in injury or damage.
- ▲ Do not push pots and pans around on the oven floor, as this could damage the surface.
- ▲ Do not lean or sit on an open oven door, or place heavy items on it. Make sure that nothing gets trapped between the door and the oven compartment. This could damage the oven. The oven door can support a maximum load of 15 kg.
- ▲ Do not use the appliance to heat up the room. Due to the high temperatures radiated, objects near the appliance could catch fire.

Accessories

- ▲ Only use genuine Miele spare parts and accessories with this appliance. If spare parts or accessories from other manufacturers are used, this will invalidate the warranty, and Miele cannot accept liability.

10

The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage caused by non-compliance with these Warning and Safety instructions.

Caring for the environment

Disposal of the packing material

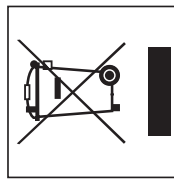
The transport and protective packing has been selected from materials which are environmentally friendly for disposal and can normally be recycled.

Ensure that any plastic wrappings, bags, etc. are disposed of safely and kept out of the reach of babies and young children. Danger of suffocation.

Rather than just throwing these materials away, please ensure they are offered for recycling.

Disposal of your old appliance or machine

Electrical and electronic appliances / machines often contain materials which, if handled or disposed of incorrectly, could be potentially hazardous to human health and to the environment. They are, however, essential for the correct functioning of your appliance or machine. Therefore, please do not dispose of your old machine or appliance with your household waste.

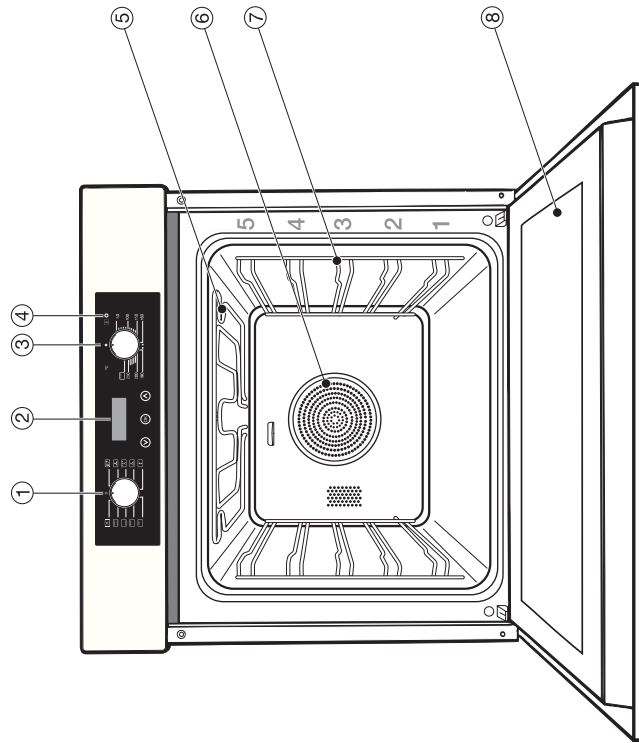



Please dispose of it at your local community waste collection / recycling centre and ensure that it presents no danger to children while being stored for disposal.

It should be unplugged or disconnected from the mains electricity supply by a competent person.
The plug must be rendered useless and the cable cut off directly behind the appliance or the machine to prevent misuse.

Description of the appliance

H 4700 B, H 4710 B, H 4800 B, H 4810 B



- ① Function selector *, retractable when it is at "0"
- ② Clock timer with sensors V, OK, A *
- ③ Temperature selector *, retractable when it is at "0"
- ④ Temperature indicator light 
- ⑤ Top heat/grill element
- ⑥ Catalytic coated back panel with air inlet for the fan
- ⑦ Runners with five shelf levels
- ⑧ Door

* not available in H 4700 B and H 4800 B

Features

Oven controls

In addition to operating the various cooking programmes to bake, roast and grill, the controls also offer the following:

- a time of day display,
- a minute minder,
- a timer to automatically switch cooking programmes on and off,
- settings that can be customised.

Safety features

Cooling fan

A cooling fan will come on automatically when a cooking programme is started. The cooling fan mixes hot air from the oven cavity with cool room air before venting it out into the kitchen through vents located between the appliance door and the control panel.

The cooling fan will continue to run for a while after the oven has been switched off to prevent any humidity building up in the oven, on the control panel or in the oven housing unit. When the temperature in the oven has fallen sufficiently, the cooling fan will switch off automatically.

Vented oven door

The oven door is an open system and the door panes have a heat-reflecting coating. During operation, cool air is passed through the oven door to keep the outer pane cool.

If necessary, the oven door can be dismantled for cleaning.

See "Cleaning and care" for more information.

Energy-saving features

Rapid heat-up function

To minimise the time it takes to heat up the oven interior, you can utilise the Rapid heat-up function.

However, pre-heating the oven is only required for select applications. Please refer to cooking instructions or separate User instructions (if available).

PerfectClean treated surfaces

The following surfaces have been treated with PerfectClean enamel:

- Oven interior
- Universal tray
- Baking tray (if available)
- Anti-splash insert (if available)

PerfectClean enamelled surfaces have very good anti-stick properties and are much easier to keep clean than conventional enamel, if cleaned regularly.

See "Cleaning and care" for more information.

Catalytic enamelled surfaces

The back panel is coated with dark grey catalytic enamel. Soiling from oil and fat is burnt off this surface when very high temperatures are used in the oven.

See "Cleaning and care" for more information.

Features

Accessories

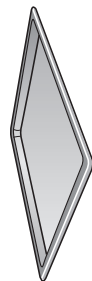
Depending on the model, your appliance is delivered with some of the following accessories.

These and other accessories are also available to order from Miele, your Chartered Agent or via the internet on www.miele-shop.com (depending on country).

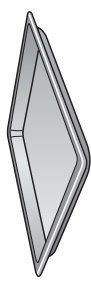
Baking tray, universal tray and rack with anti-tip safety notches

(depending on model)

Baking tray



Universal tray



Rack

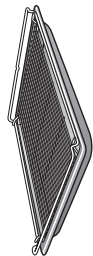


The baking tray, universal tray and rack are inserted into the oven between the two rails of a shelf runner.

The short sides of the tray and rack have a groove in the middle. The non-tip safety notch prevents the trays and rack from slipping out of a shelf when they only need to be partially pulled out.

The trays and rack can then only be taken out of the oven by raising them upwards and then pulling them out.

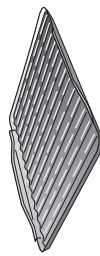
Always insert the rack in the shelf with the groove on the sides facing downwards.



If you are using a tray with the rack on top, insert the tray between the rails of a shelf runner and the rack will sit on top of it.

Anti-splash insert

(depending on model)




The anti-splash insert should be placed in the universal tray when grilling or roasting.

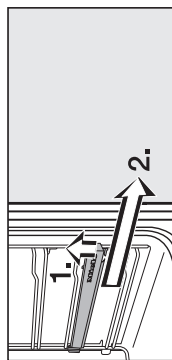
The juices from the food being cooked collect under the anti-splash tray. This prevents them from spilling and making the oven dirty. The juices can then be used for making gravy and sauces.

Features

Remove FlexiClip telescopic runners

 **Danger of burning**
The oven interior needs to have cooled down before you start handling anything inside it.

To remove a FlexiClip runner so that you can clip it into another shelf runner, for example,




- lift it at the front and then pull it out along the rail of the oven shelf runner.
- Clip it to the required shelf level, see "Features - Fitting the FlexiClip telescopic runners".

16

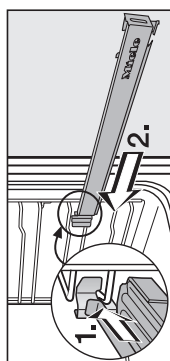
Features

Fitting the FlexiClip telescopic runners

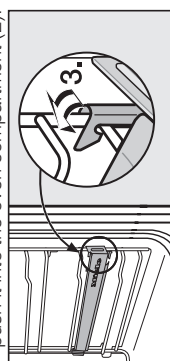
 **Danger of burning**
The oven interior needs to have cooled down before you start handling anything inside it.

The telescopic runners are fitted in between the two rails that make up a shelf level.
The telescopic runner with the Miele logo is fitted on the right.

When fitting the telescopic runners, **do not** extend them.



- Fit the telescopic runner in between the two rails at the front (1) and then push it into the oven compartment (2).

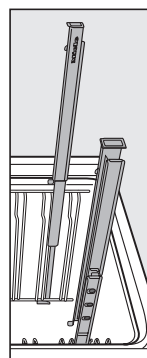


- Then secure the telescopic runner to the bottom of the two rails as illustrated (3).

If the telescopic runners are difficult to pull out after fitting, you may need to pull firmly on them once to release them.

FlexiClip telescopic runners

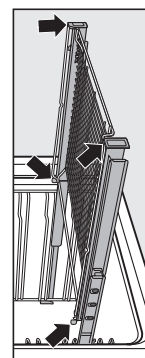
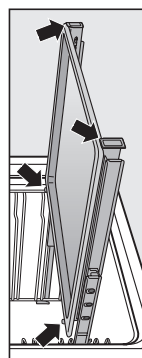
(depending on model)



The FlexiClip telescopic runners can be clipped into any of the existing shelf runners and pulled out of the oven to their fullest extent.

Push the telescopic runners right in before placing a tray or rack on them.

To prevent the risk of a rack or tray sliding off the runners, make sure that they are sitting securely on their runners in between the stoppers at either end of each runner.



The maximum load for the runners is 15 kg.

15





Functions

Your oven has a range of oven functions for preparing a wide variety of recipes.

The oven has the following functions:

- A** Top heat/grill element (underneath the roof of the oven)
- B** Bottom heat element (underneath the oven floor)
- C** Ring heating element (behind the air inlet for the fan)
- D** Fan (behind the air inlet for the fan)

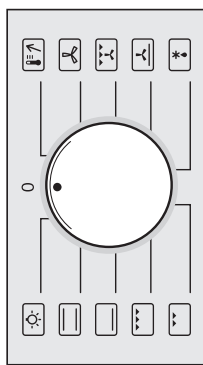
Depending on the function, these components will be combined differently, see information in [].

Functions	Notes
 Conventional [A + B]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For baking and cooking traditional recipes, e.g. fruit cake, casseroles. Also ideal for soufflés. If using an older recipe or cookbook, set the oven temperature for Conventional 10 °C lower than that recommended. <p>The cooking duration does not need to be changed.</p>
 Bottom Heat [B]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use this setting towards the end of baking to reheat or brown the base of a cake, quiche or pizza.
 Grill [A]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The grill is ready for use when it glows red. For grilling larger quantities of thin cuts (e.g. steaks). For browning larger dishes.
 Economy Grill [A]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The inner element of the grill is ready for use when it glows red. For grilling small quantities of thin cuts (e.g. steaks) For browning smaller dishes.

18


Oven controls


Function selector




The left-hand control is used to select the function.
It can be turned clockwise or anti-clockwise.
The function selector can only be retracted when it is at "0".


 Rapid Heat-up

 Fan Plus

 Fan Grill


 Intensive Bake


 Defrost

 Conventional

 Bottom Heat

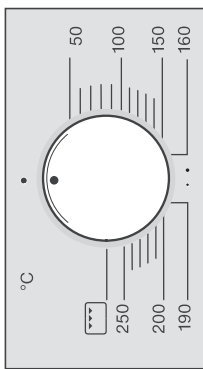
 Grill

 Economy Grill

 Lighting:

The oven lighting can be switched on separately, e.g. for cleaning.

Temperature selector



The right-hand control is used to select the temperature.
It can be turned clockwise as far as it will go and back again.
The temperature selector can only be retracted when it is at "0".

Temperature indicator light








The temperature indicator light  is located next to the temperature selector.
The indicator light is always on when the heating is on.

When the set temperature is reached,
– the oven heating switches off.
– the temperature indicator light goes out.

However, if the temperature falls below the set temperature, the oven heating and the temperature indicator light will switch on again.

17

Functions

Functions	Notes
 Rapid Heat-up [A] + [C] + [D]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For pre-heating the oven compartment. The oven function required must then be selected.
 Fan Plus [C] + [D]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For baking and roasting. You can bake and roast on different levels at the same time. Lower temperatures can be used than with "Conventional" as the Fan Plus system distributes the heated air around the food.
 Fan Grill [A] + [D]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The heating elements and fan are switched on alternately. For grilling larger items, e.g. rolled meat, poultry. The hot air from the grill is distributed over the food by the fan. This enables a lower temperature to be selected than when using "Grill"  "Economy Grill" .
 Intensive Bake [B] + [C] + [D]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For cooking dishes which require a moist topping and a crisp base such as pizza and quiche lorraine. Intensive Bake is not suitable for baking thin biscuits etc. or for roasting as the juices will become too dark.
 Defrost [D]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For the gentle defrosting of frozen food.

19

Before using for the first time

Before the oven can be used, you will need to

- release the controls by pressing them in if they are pushed in when the oven is delivered.
- set the time of day on ovens with a clock timer.

Cleaning and heating up for the first time

Before use, please remove


- any stickers from the floor of the oven.
- any protective foil from the oven front.

See "Cleaning and care" for more information.

Before using the oven for the first time,

- take **all accessories** out of the oven and wash them.

- then **heat the oven up once with nothing in it**. New ovens can give off a slight smell on first use. Doing this will dissipate the smells before you use it to cook food.

- Wipe out the interior with a damp cloth to remove any dust or bits of packaging that may have accumulated in the oven compartment during storage and unpacking.
- Press in the function selector and the temperature selector to release them.
- Use the function selector to select Fan Plus .
- Use the temperature selector to set the highest temperature (250 °C).

To set the time of day for the first time

The clock timer has a 24-hour clock.



After connecting the appliance, ● lights up and 0:00 starts flashing.

- Touch the OK sensor.
- 0:00 lights up in the display and ● flashes.
- While ● is flashing in the display, enter the time of day with the V or ^ sensor.
- Touch the OK sensor.
- The time of day is now registered and ● lights up.
- The time of day operates in minute units.

20

Before using for the first time

The oven will start heating up as soon as this entry has been accepted.

- Heat up the empty appliance for at least an hour.

Please ensure the room is well ventilated during this operation. Close doors to other rooms to prevent the smell spreading throughout the house.

The timer can also be used to set the finish time. See "Entering a cooking duration".

- Leave the appliance to cool down to room temperature.
- Then wipe the oven interior out with a solution of hot water and a mild detergent and dry it thoroughly with a soft clean cloth.

Leave the oven door open until the oven interior is completely dry.

21

Clock timer

The clock timer (model dependent)

- displays the time of day.
- can be used as a minute minder.
- can automatically switch the oven off or on/off.

Sensors

The sensors underneath the display react to touch.

A keypad tone sounds each time a sensor is touched.

Operation



Operation of the clock timer is done via the OK, ^ and v sensors and the display.

Sensor	Use
OK	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Calling up the minute minder ^ – Calling up the duration ⌚ – Calling up the finish duration ⌚ – To save entries
v and ^ simultaneously	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Calling up the time of day ● – To delete times
^	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – To increase times – To change the audible tone
v	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – To reduce times – To call up the audible tone – To change the audible tone

22

Clock timer

If you call up a function, the relevant symbol (Δ, ⏰, ⏱, ⏲) will flash in the display.

You can enter the time only as long as the symbol flashes (approx. 15 seconds).
If the symbol has stopped flashing, you will need to call it up again with the OK sensor.

Times are changed by the minute with each touch of the V or Λ sensors.
Touching the sensor for longer speeds up the change in the display.

Press the OK sensor to save or wait approx. 15 seconds.

After this time, your entry will be automatically registered and the symbol will light up.

Time displays

If a minute minder is entered, its progress will be shown first.

If the duration ⏱ and finish ⏲ functions are entered, the time of day will be shown first. The ⏱ and ⏲ symbols indicate the entered times. Times can be called up by pressing the OK sensor.

Changing the time of day

The clock timer has a 24-hour clock.

The time of day can only be changed if a cooking time (duration ⏱/finish ⏲) hasn't been entered.

- Press the V and Λ sensors simultaneously.
- While ● is flashing in the display, enter the time of day with the V or Λ sensor.
- Touch the OK sensor.

The time of day is now registered and ● lights up.

After a power cut, the time of day needs to be re-entered.

Clock timer

To change the audible tone

You can choose between different tones.

- Press the V sensor until 5 and a number appear in the display, e.g.



The audible tone for this combination will sound at the same time.

With each touch of the V or the Λ sensor a new tone will sound.

The options are from 5 0 to 5 30.

- Touch V or Λ repeatedly until the required tone sounds.
- Touch the OK sensor to save the selection.

You can also wait for approx. 15 seconds. The tone that sounds at the last touch of the sensor will be saved after this time.

After a power cut, the audible tone will be reset to the factory default setting.

Using the minute minder Δ function

The minute minder can be used to time any activity in the kitchen, e.g. boiling eggs.

You can set the minute minder at the same time as another timed programme, e.g. as a reminder to stir a dish or add seasoning etc.

A minute minder time of between 1 minute and 23 hours 59 minutes can be entered.

Operation

Using the oven

- Place the food in the oven.
- Use the function selector to select the required function.

The interior lighting comes on.

- Use the temperature selector to set the required temperature.

The oven heating and cooling fan will switch on.

- At the end of the programme, turn the function and temperature selectors to "0" and remove the food from the oven.





The cooling fan will continue to run for a while after the oven has been switched off to prevent any humidity building up in the oven, on the control panel or in the oven housing unit.

When the temperature in the oven has fallen sufficiently, the cooling fan will switch off automatically.

Pre-heating


Most dishes can be placed in a cold oven. They will then make use of the heat produced during the heating phase.

Pre-heating is only useful in a few cases:



	– for baking dark bread
	– for roasting beef/roast
	– for baking cakes/pastries with a short baking time (up to approx. 30 minutes)
	– for baking sensitive doughs (sponges)

With **Fan Grill**  (see Fan Grilling Guide)

With **Grill**  **Economy Grill**  (see Grilling Guide)

Do not use Rapid Heat-up  to pre-heat the oven when baking pizzas or biscuits and small cakes. They will brown too quickly.

To pre-heat the oven:

- Select Rapid Heat-up .
 - Select the temperature.
- The oven will start to heat up.
- When the temperature indicator light  goes out for the first time, set the oven function you require for continued cooking or baking, and place the food in the oven.

26

Clock timer

To set the minute minder

- Press and hold in the OK sensor until the  symbol starts flashing in the display.



0:00 flashes in the display.

- As long as the  symbol flashes, enter the minute minder with the  or  sensors.

- Touch the OK sensor.

The entry will be registered.

The  symbol indicates the minute minder and its progress in the display.

The last minute of the minute minder counts down in seconds.


At the end of the time set for the minute minder




-  flashes,
- a buzzer will sound for approx. 7 minutes.

- Touch the OK sensor.

The buzzer will stop and the symbols in the display will go out.

To change the time set for the minute minder

- Press and hold in the OK sensor until the  symbol starts flashing in the display.

- As long as the  symbol flashes, enter the minute minder with the  or  sensors.

To cancel the time set for the minute minder

- Press and hold in the OK sensor until the  symbol starts flashing in the display.

- As long as  flashes, press the  and  sensors simultaneously.




The duration is deleted and the time of day will appear.

25

Operation

Switching on and off automatically

You can programme the oven to switch off automatically or on and off automatically.


To activate **Automatic switch-off**, enter a duration  or a duration  and finish .

The maximum duration which can be set is 10 hours.

We recommend using automatic switching on and off when roasting. However, do not delay the start for too long when baking as the cake mixture or dough will dry out, and the raising agents will lose their effectiveness.

Entering a cooking duration


By selecting a duration, you can set a programme to switch off automatically.

- Place the food in the oven.
- Select the required function and set the temperature.
- Press and hold in the OK sensor until the  symbol starts flashing in the display.



0•00 flashes in the display.

- As long as  flashes, enter the duration with the .

Once the entry has been saved, the time of day will appear in the display. The  symbol indicates the duration selected.

Operation

To enter the duration and finish time

To use the automatic switching on and off function on the oven, both the cooking duration and the finish time must be entered.

For example:

The time now is 10:45;

you want a dish with a cooking duration of 90 minutes to be ready at 13:30.

- Place the food in the oven.
- Select the required function and set the temperature.



The oven heating, lighting and cooling fan will switch on.

First **enter the cooking duration**:

- Press and hold in the OK sensor until the  symbol starts flashing in the display.

0•00 flashes in the display.




- As long as  flashes, enter the duration with the  in hours:minutes (1:30).

Now delay the **finish** time:

- Touch the OK sensor.



In the display:



- 12•15 appears (time of day plus duration: 10:45 + 1:30 = 12:15).
- the  symbol will flash.



- As long as  flashes, postpone the end with the  to the required time (13:30).

The oven heating, lighting and cooling fan will switch off.

- Touch the OK sensor.

Once the entry has been saved, the time of day will appear in the display. The  and  symbols indicate the entered times.

If a minute minder is entered at the same time, this is shown first.

As soon as the start time (13:30 - 1:30 = 12:00) is reached, the oven heating, lighting and cooling fan will switch on.

Baking tips

Baking paper

Because of their PerfectClean anti-stick surface, **the baking tray and the universal tray** do not need to be greased or lined with baking paper for baking.
Baked goods are easily removed when done.

Baking paper is only necessary when baking:

- Anything with a **high salt content** (e. g. pretzels, bread sticks), because sodium can damage the PerfectClean surface.
- Meringues or biscuits with a **high egg-white content**, because they are more likely to stick.

Universal tray

When baking cakes with **fresh fruit toppings** and **deep sponge cakes**, place the tin in the universal tray to catch any spillages and keep the oven cleaner.

Rectangular tins

Place cakes in rectangular tins with the longer side across the width of the oven for optimum heat distribution and even results.

Refer to the baking charts for suggestions of temperatures, shelf levels and cooking durations. These take into account a range of different baking tins, quantities and cooking traditions.

Handling and preparing food correctly is essential for maintaining good health.

Only bake cakes, pizza, chips etc. until they are golden. Do not overcook them.

Bakeware

Please take into account the material of your bakeware in your choice of oven function:

Fan Plus , Intensive Bake

Any heat-resistant material can be used.

Conventional


Dark metal, enamel or aluminium baking tins with a matt finish, as well as heat-resistant glass and ceramic dishes can be used.

Bright, shiny metal tins result in uneven or poor browning and in some cases cakes might not cook properly.

30

Operation

At the end of the duration

- the oven heating switches off automatically.
- the cooling fan will continue to run for a while.
- a buzzer will sound for approx. 7 minutes.
-  will flash.

■ Touch the OK sensor.


The buzzer will stop and the symbols in the display will go out.

The oven will start heating up again as soon as the OK sensor is pressed. Switch the appliance off if you are no longer using it.

To check and change the duration


- Press and hold in the OK sensor until the  symbol starts flashing in the display.

The duration remaining will be displayed.

- As long as the  flashes, the duration can be changed.

To delete the duration

- Press and hold in the OK sensor until the  symbol starts flashing in the display.

- As long as  flashes, press the **V** and **Λ** sensors simultaneously.

The duration is deleted and the time of day will appear.

The oven starts heating up as soon as the duration is deleted.
Therefore, definitely switch off the appliance if you are no longer using it.

29

Baking chart


Fan Plus

Cakes / biscuits	Temperature in °C	Recommended shelf level	Duration ¹⁾ in min.
Creamed mixture			
Sponge cake	150 – 170	2	60 – 70
Ring cake	150 – 170	2	65 – 80
Foam cake (tray)	150 – 170	2	25 – 40
Marble, nut cake (tin)	150 – 170	2	60 – 80
Fresh fruit cake with filling (tray)	150 – 170	2	45 – 50
Fresh fruit cake (tray)	150 – 170	2	35 – 55
Fresh fruit cake (tin)	150 – 170	2	55 – 65
Fan base ⁵⁾	150 – 170	2	25 – 30
Small cakes/biscuits ³⁾ (tray)	150 – 170	1, 3, 4)	20 – 25
Sponge mix³⁾			
Sponge cake (3 to 6 eggs) ³⁾	160 – 180	2	25 – 35
Sponge cake (2 eggs) ³⁾	160 – 180	2	20 – 25
Swiss roll ²⁾	160 – 180	2	20 – 25
Rubbed in mixture			
Tart / fan base	150 – 170	2	20 – 25
Streusel cake	150 – 170	2	45 – 55
Small cakes/biscuits ³⁾ (tray)	150 – 170	1, 3, 4)	15 – 25
Cheese cake	150 – 170	2	70 – 90
Apple pie	150 – 170	2	50 – 70
Apricot tart with topping	150 – 170	2	55 – 75
Swiss apple pie ²⁾	190 – 210	2	25 – 35
Yeast mixture / quark dough			
To prove dough	30 – 50	Oven floor ⁵⁾	15 – 30
Guglhupf	150 – 170	2	50 – 60
Streusel cake	150 – 170	2	35 – 45
Fresh fruit cake (tray)	160 – 180	2	40 – 50
White bread	160 – 180	2	40 – 50
Wholegrain bread ²⁾	170 – 190	2	50 – 60
Pizza (tray) ³⁾	170 – 190	2	35 – 45
Onion tart	170 – 190	2	35 – 45
Apple turnovers	150 – 170	1, 3, 4)	25 – 30
Choux pastry³⁾, Eclairs	160 – 180	1, 3, 4)	30 – 40
Puff pastry	170 – 190	1, 3, 4)	20 – 25
Meringues, Macaroons	120 – 140	1, 3, 4)	25 – 50

1) Unless otherwise stated, the times given are for an oven which has not been pre-heated.

2) With a pre-heated oven, shorten times by up to 10 minutes.

3) Pre-heat the oven.

4) Switch Rapid Heat-up  off during the heating-up phase.

5) Take baking trays out of the oven early if the food is sufficiently browned before the specified time has elapsed.

6) Place the rack on the floor of the oven, and stand the bowl containing the dough on the rack.

In general, if a range of temperatures/times is given, it is best to select a lower temperature and to check the food after the shortest time.

32

Baking tips

Notes about the charts

Temperature, baking duration






To achieve even results without over-browning the food,

- always select the **lowest temperature** given in the chart. Do not set a temperature higher than that recommended. Increasing the temperature may reduce the cooking time, but will lead to uneven browning, and unsatisfactory cooking results.

- Check if the food is cooked at the end of the **shortest time quoted**. To check if a cake is ready, insert a wooden skewer into the centre. It is ready if the skewer comes out clean, without dough or crumbs sticking to it.

Shelf level

The shelf levels are counted from the bottom of the oven upwards (1 = lowest, 5 = highest).

	Number of trays	Shelf level
	1	2
	2	1 and 3
	3	1, 3 and 5 *
	1	1 or 2
	1	1 or 2

* When baking moist cakes, bread etc., do not use more than two baking tins at the same time.

31

Baking chart

Intensive Bake


Particularly suitable for

- dishes that require a moist topping and crisp base like pizza and quiche lorraine.
- cakes with a filling where the base has not been pre-baked, e.g. some cheesecakes.

Cakes / biscuits	Temperature in °C	Recommended shelf level	Duration ¹⁾ in min.
Creamed mixture			
Fresh fruit cake, with filling (tray)	150 – 170	2	30 – 35
Rubbed in mixture			
Cheesecake	150 – 170	2	65 – 75
Apple pie	150 – 170	2	50 – 60
Apricot tart, with filling	150 – 170	2	50 – 60
Swiss apple pie	190 – 210	1 or 2	25 – 30
Yeast mixtures / quark dough			
Pizza (tray) ²⁾	170 – 190	2	40 – 50
Onion tart	170 – 190	2	25 – 35

1) Unless otherwise stated, the times given are for an oven which has not been pre-heated.

With a pre-heated oven, shorten times by up to 10 minutes.

2) Switch Rapid Heat-up  off during the heating-up phase.

In general, if a range of temperatures/times is given, it is best to select a lower temperature and to check the food after the shortest time.

34

Baking chart


Conventional

Cakes / biscuits	Temperature in °C	Recommended shelf level	Duration ¹⁾ in min.
Creamed mixture			
Sponge cake	150 – 170	2	60 – 70
Ring cake	170 – 190	2	65 – 80
Foam cake (tray) ¹⁾	170 – 190	2	25 – 40
Marble, nut cake (tin)	150 – 170	2	60 – 80
Fresh fruit cake, with filling (tray)	170 – 190	2	45 – 50
Fresh fruit cake (tray)	170 – 190	2	35 – 55
Fresh fruit cake (tin)	160 – 180	2	55 – 65
Flan base ²⁾³⁾	170 – 190	2	20 – 25
Small cakes ²⁾³⁾ (tray)	170 – 190	3	15 – 25
Sponge mix ²⁾³⁾			
Sponge cake (3 to 6 eggs) ²⁾³⁾	170 – 190	3	20 – 35
Sponge cake (2 eggs) ²⁾³⁾	170 – 190	3	15 – 20
Swiss roll ²⁾³⁾	180 – 200	3	12 – 16
Rubbed in mixture			
Tart / flan base	170 – 190	2	15 – 20
Streusel cake	170 – 190	2	45 – 55
Small cakes ²⁾³⁾ (tray)	160 – 180	3	15 – 25
Cheesecake	170 – 190	2	70 – 90
Apple pie ²⁾	170 – 190	2	45 – 65
Apricot tart, with filling ²⁾	170 – 190	2	55 – 75
Swiss apple pie ²⁾	220 – 240	1	25 – 35
Yeast mixtures / quark dough			
To prove dough	30 – 50	Oven floor ⁴⁾	15 – 30
Guglhupf	160 – 180	1	50 – 60
Streusel cake	170 – 190	2 ⁵⁾	35 – 45
Fresh fruit cake (tray)	180 – 200	2 ⁵⁾	40 – 50
White bread	160 – 180	1	50 – 60
Wholegrain bread ²⁾	190 – 210	2	50 – 60
Pizza (tray) ²⁾³⁾	190 – 210	1	30 – 40
Onion tart	180 – 200	2	25 – 35
Apple turnovers	160 – 180	2	25 – 30
Choux pastry ²⁾³⁾			
Eclairs	180 – 200	3	35 – 45
Puff pastry ²⁾			
	190 – 210	2	15 – 25
Meringues²⁾, Macaroons			
	120 – 140	2	25 – 50

1) Unless otherwise stated, the times given are for an oven which has not been pre-heated.

With a pre-heated oven, shorten times by up to 10 minutes.

2) Pre-heat the oven.

3) Switch Rapid Heat-up  off during the heating-up phase.





4) Place the rack on the floor of the oven, and stand the bowl containing the dough on the rack.

5) Shelf level for yeast dough. For quark dough, use shelf level 3.

In general, if a range of temperatures/times is given, it is best to select a lower temperature and to check the food after the shortest time.

33

Roasting tips

Tips	Notes
Function Fan Plus 	You can also use Conventional  .
Crockery Any heat-resistant containers	The Miele Gourmet oven dish, roasting pans with a lid, ovenproof china or glass, roasting bags, the universal tray, the rack on top of the universal tray, the anti-splash insert in the universal tray. We recommend roasting in a covered pot as – this ensures that sufficient stock remains for making gravy, – and the oven stays cleaner, too.
Shelf level 2nd shelf level from the bottom	
Pre-heating Generally not required	Place the roasting pan on the rack into a cold oven. Exceptions: for roasting beef/fillet.
Temperature Please refer to the roasting chart.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not select a higher temperature than suggested. The meat will brown on the outside, but will not be properly cooked through. With Fan Plus , a temperature of 20 °C less than for Conventional  is sufficient. For cuts which weigh 3 kg or more, select a temperature approx. 10 °C lower than that given in the roasting chart. Roasting will take longer at the lower temperature, but will be more even. For roasting directly on the rack, select a temperature that is about 20 °C lower than for roasting in a covered pot.
Roasting duration Please refer to the roasting chart.	To calculate the roasting time: The traditional method is to allow 15 to 20 minutes per 450 grams, according to type of meat, plus approx. 20 minutes, adjusting the length of time as roasting proceeds to obtain the required result. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Beef/Venison: 15–18 Min./cm Pork/Veal/Lamb: 12–15 Min./cm Roast beef/Fillet: 8–10 Min./cm

35

Roasting tips

Useful tips

Browning

Browning only occurs towards the end of the roasting time. Remove the lid about halfway through the roasting time if a more intensive browning result is desired.

Standing time

At the end of the programme, take the roast out of the oven, wrap in aluminium foil and leave to stand for about 10 minutes. This helps retain juices when the meat is carved.

Roasting poultry

For a crisp finish, baste the poultry ten minutes before the end of cooking time with slightly salted water.

Frozen meat

Do not roast deep frozen meat. Meat should be thoroughly defrosted before roasting.

36

Notes on low temperature cooking

Cooking at low temperatures is ideal for cooking beef, pork, veal or lamb when a particularly tender result is required.

First the meat needs to be seared all over briefly at a high temperature on the cooktop in order to seal it.

By using a low temperature together with a long cooking duration, meat will be cooked to perfection and be very tender. The meat is allowed to relax again. The meat juices inside the joint start to circulate evenly throughout the meat to reach the outer layers.

This leads to very tender and succulent results.

Please note:

- Use lean meat which has been correctly hung and trimmed. Bones should be removed before cooking.
- For searing, use a suitable cooking oil that can withstand high temperatures.
- Do not cover meat during cooking.
- Cooking takes between 2-4 hours depending on the size and amount of meat and on the degree of doneness and browning required.
- The meat can be carved immediately. It does not need to rest.

Procedure for low temperature cooking

Use a rack and the universal tray.


- Place the rack and universal tray on the second shelf.

- Select Conventional Heat .

- Pre-heat the oven including the rack and the universal tray at 130 °C for approximately 15 minutes.

- Whilst the oven is pre-heating, sear the meat thoroughly on the cooktop.



Cooking times and core temperatures can be found in the table if you have a manual food probe.



 **Danger of burning!**
The top heating element/grill element is hot.

- Place the meat on the rack.
- Insert a food probe, if available, into the meat.
- Reduce the temperature to 100 °C.
- Cooking the meat.

It is a good idea to programme the duration of the cooking programme. See "Entering a cooking duration". The cooking result won't be affected if the meat is left in the oven after the finish of the programme.

Roasting chart

Food	Recom- mended shelf level	Fan Plus 		Conventional 	
		Temperature in °C ²⁾	Time in min. ³⁾	Temperature in °C ²⁾	Time in min. ³⁾
Topside of beef, approx. 1 kg	2	170 – 190	100 – 120	190 – 210	100 – 120
Beef fillet or roast beef, approx. 1 kg ⁴⁾	2	190 – 210	45 – 55	200 – 220	45 – 55
Venison, approx. 1 kg	2	180 – 200	90 – 120	190 – 210	90 – 120
Pork joint, approx. 1 kg	2	170 – 190	100 – 120	200 – 220	100 – 120
Pork joint with crackling, approx. 2 kg	2	150 – 170	160 – 180	180 – 200	120 – 150
Gammon joint, approx. 1 kg	2	170 – 190	60 – 70	200 – 220	60 – 70
Meat loaf, approx. 1 kg	2	160 – 180	70 – 80	190 – 210	70 – 80
Veal, approx. 1.5 kg	2	170 – 190	100 – 120	190 – 210	100 – 120
Leg of lamb, approx. 1.5 kg	2	170 – 190	90 – 120	200 – 220	90 – 120
Rack of lamb, approx. 1.5 kg ⁴⁾	2	170 – 190	50 – 60	190 – 210	50 – 60
Poultry, 0.8 – 1 kg	2	170 – 190	60 – 70	190 – 210	60 – 70
Poultry, approx. 2 kg	2	170 – 190	90 – 110	190 – 210	90 – 110
Poultry, stuffed, approx. 2 kg	2	170 – 190	110 – 130	190 – 210	110 – 130
Poultry, approx. 4 kg	2	160 – 180	150 – 180	180 – 200	150 – 180
Fish, whole, approx. 1.5 kg	2	160 – 180	35 – 55	190 – 210	35 – 55

1) We recommend Fan Plus  for roasting, however, Conventional  can also be used.

2) Temperature in a covered pot.

3) Unless otherwise stated, the times given are calculated on the basis of an oven which has not been pre-heated.

4) Pre-heat the oven.

In general, if a range of temperatures and times is given, it is best to select a temperature in the middle and to check the food after the shortest time.

Notes on low temperature cooking

Cooking times/Core temperatures

Food	Time in min.	Core tempera- ture in °C
Roast beef		
– rare	60–90	55–60
– medium	120–150	65–70
– well done	180–240	70–75
Pork fillet	120–150	65–80
Gammon*	150–210	75–80
Saddle of veal*	180–210	65–75
Saddle of lamb*	90–120	65–75

* no bones

Note:


Cooking times will vary depending on size, weight and the shape of the cut of meat.


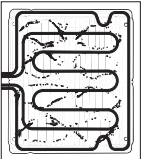


Useful tips

Because it has been cooked using low temperatures


- meat can be kept warm quite safely in the oven until it is served. This will not affect results in any way.
- The meat is at an ideal temperature to be eaten straight away. Serve on pre-heated plates with very hot sauce or gravy to prevent it cooling down too quickly.

Grilling tips

 Danger of burning!
Grill with the oven door closed.
If you grill with the door open, hot air will escape from the oven instead of being cooled by the cooling fan. The controls will get hot.

Functions	Notes
Grill 	For grilling thin cuts in large quantities and for browning large baked dishes. The whole grill element will get hot and glow red.
	Economy Grill  For grilling thin cuts in small quantities and for browning small baked dishes. The inner part of the grill heating element will get hot and glow red.
Fan Grill 	For grilling thicker items, e.g. rolled meat, poultry pieces.

Grilling tips

Tips	Notes
Containers Rack on the universal tray Anti-splash insert in the universal tray	Do not use the baking tray.
Shelf level from the bottom Please refer to the grilling chart	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For thin cuts, use shelf level 4 or 5 For thicker cuts, use shelf level 3 or 4
Pre-heating The grill has to be pre-heated.	Pre-heat the grill for approx. 5 minutes with the door shut.
Temperature Please refer to the Fan Grilling Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For thin cuts of meat (e. g. chops or steak):  For grilling thicker items, (e. g. rolled meat, poultry): 240 °C Do not select a higher temperature than suggested. The meat will brown on the outside, but will not be properly cooked through.
Grilling duration Please refer to the Fan Grilling Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flat pieces of fish and meat usually take 6–8 minutes per side. Thicker pieces take a little longer. It is best to grill food of a similar thickness at the same time so that the grilling time for each item does not vary too greatly. With rolled meat, allow approx. 10 minutes per cm diameter. Turn food half-way through cooking.

41

Grilling tips

Preparing food for grilling

Rinse the meat briefly under running cold water, pat dry. Do not season meat with salt before grilling as this draws the juices out.

Add a little oil to lean meat if necessary. Do not use other types of fat as they can burn and cause smoke.

Clean fish in the normal way. To enhance the flavour, add a little salt or squeeze a little lemon juice over the fish.

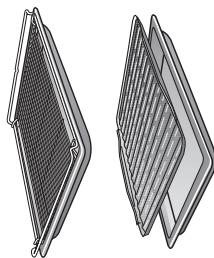
Useful tips

To grill thicker pieces of food more gradually after an initial high temperature, continue grilling at a lower temperature setting or use a lower shelf runner to allow the food to cook through to the centre.

One way of finding out how far through a piece of meat has been cooked is to press down on it with a spoon.

- If there is very little resistance to the pressure of the spoon, it will still be red on the inside ("rare").
- If there is some resistance, the inside will be pink ("medium").
- If there is great resistance, it is thoroughly cooked through ("well done").

Grilling



- Assemble the rack and anti-splash insert on the universal tray as illustrated.
- Place the food on the rack.
- Select the required function and set the temperature.
- Pre-heat the grill for approx. 5 minutes with the door shut.
- Place the food under the grill and shut the door.
- Turn food half-way through cooking.

42

Grilling tips

Fan Grilling guide (Fan Grill)

- Use the Fan Grill function for meat, fish, poultry and vegetables.
- Always pre-heat for at least 5 minutes before Fan Grilling.
- It is not necessary to turn food when Fan Grilling.
- The door must be closed during Fan Grilling.
- When using red meat, pat the meat dry before Fan Grilling as this encourages a richer colour.
- Note: all temperatures are approximations and must be varied according to the thickness and preparation of the meat. The chart below is a suggested guide only. Personal taste and size of serves will vary times and temperatures. We recommend you monitor cooking results for best outcomes.

Food	Temperature in °C	Shelf level	Total grilling time in min.
Lean thin sausages	180-190	4	8-10
Thick sausages	180	4	15-20
Lean beef fillet steak	220	5	6-12
Chicken breast fillet, plain or a dry marinade	200	4	14-18
Chicken breast fillet, with a wet marinade	200	3	14-18
Whole butterflied chicken	200	5	35-40
Thin white fish filets	220	4	6-10
Thick fish filets, cutlets or steaks (on anti-splash insert placed in the universal tray)	200	4	10-15
Oily fish (on anti-splash insert placed in the universal tray)	200	4	8-12
Lamb loin chops	190	4	12-16
Lamb back straps	220	5	8-10
Vegetables, capsicum, zucchini, sweet potato, eggplant	200	5	12-15
Potato wedges or small roast potatoes	220	3	20-25
Kebabs and satays (red meat)	200	5	12-15
Chicken satays	200	4	12-15

Fan Grilling can be used for small roasts but is only recommended for lean, tender cuts of meat, eg lamb racks, rump roasts, and beef fillet. Fan Grill the roast at 180 - 200 °C on shelf level 3, depending on thickness.

Grilling tips

Grilling guide (Grill / Economy Grill)

- Use for thick toasts, muffins, cheese on toast, foccacia, bruschetta and bacon.
- Pre-heat grill for at least 5 minutes on 200 °C - 220 °C.
- Select the appropriate shelf level for the thickness of the food.
- Thinner foods can be positioned on shelf 5, while thicker foods should be grilled on shelf 4.
- Grill until food is golden brown and crispy.
- Door must be closed for grilling.


Bottling

We recommend using Fan Plus .

Containers for bottling

- Jars for bottling
- Jars with twist-off lids. Only use special jars for bottling.

 Do not use tins.

6 jars ¹⁾ (1 l content)	Temperature	Time from simmering point ^{2),3)} in min.	Residual heat time in min.
Fruit, cucumbers	150 – 170 °C until boiling. Then select "Lighting  .	None	25 – 30
Asparagus, carrots	150 – 170 °C until simmering.	60 – 90	25 – 30
Peas, beans	Then continue cooking at 100 °C.	90 – 120	25 – 30

1) Insert universal tray in lowest shelf level and place jars on top.

2) Simmering = consistent rising of bubbles

3) Reduce the temperature at the same time to avoid the produce boiling over.

After bottling

Take the jars from the oven, and leave to set for approx. 24 h. Cover the jars with a clean tea towel.

Make sure all jars are closed properly when storing them.

46

Defrost

Defrosting times

The time needed for defrosting depends on the type and weight of the food, and at what temperature it was deep frozen. The following chart is for guidance only. It is important to check that food is thoroughly defrosted.

Food	Weight	Time in min.
Chicken	800 g	90–120
Meat	500 g	60–90
	1000 g	90–120
Sausages	500 g	30–50
Fish	1000 g	60–90
Strawberries	300 g	30–40
Butter cake	500 g	20–30
Bread	500 g	30–50

The Defrost  function uses the fan to circulate air at room temperature.

Please note:


- Where possible, remove the packaging and put the food to be defrosted on the universal tray or into a suitable dish.
- When defrosting poultry, put it on the rack over the universal tray to catch the defrosted liquid so that the meat is not lying in this liquid.

 It is particularly important to observe food hygiene rules when defrosting poultry. Do not use the liquid from the defrosted poultry. Pour it away, and wash the tray, the sink and your hands. Danger of salmonella poisoning!

- Fish does not need to be fully defrosted before cooking. Defrost so that the surface is sufficiently soft to take herbs and seasoning. Do not refreeze food once it has thawed.

45

Cooking ready meals

We recommend using Fan plus .

- Select the required function and set the temperature.
- When the temperature indicator light  goes out, place the dish in the pre-heated oven.

Cook frozen desserts and pizza on baking paper on the rack rather than on the baking tray or the universal tray. Cooking large frozen items on the baking tray or the universal tray can cause the metal to distort. This distortion will increase with each subsequent use.
Frozen food such as oven chips or croquette potatoes can, however, be cooked on the baking tray or the universal tray.


Examples of ready meals

Food	Temperature in °C *	Shelf level from the bottom*	Time in min.*	Notes
Potato, pasta or vegetable bake	250	2	20 – 25	Place in a suitable dish
Lasagne, cannelloni	190	2	35 – 40	Remove the packaging
Filled baguette, panini	200	2	12 – 15	Place on baking paper, directly on the rack
Pre-cooked pizza	200	2	12 – 20	Place on baking paper, directly on the rack
Pre-cooked mini pizza	220	2	8 – 10	Place on baking paper, directly on the rack
Potato pancakes, Rösti, croquettes	220	2	12 – 20	Place on baking paper, directly on the rack
Pretzels	220	2	12 – 15	Place on baking paper, directly on the rack

* Observe recommended temperatures, cooking times and position in the oven given on the manufacturer's packaging.

Cleaning and care

Miele branded cleaning and conditioning products are available from Miele.

 Do not use a steam cleaner to clean the appliance. The steam could reach electrical components and cause a short circuit.

The external surfaces of this appliance are all susceptible to scratching. Scratches on glass surfaces could even cause a breakage in certain circumstances. Contact with unsuitable cleaning agents can alter or discolour the external surfaces.

Avoid damage to the surface. To prevent damage to your appliance when cleaning, do not use:

- Cleaning agents containing soda, ammonia, acids or chlorides
- Cleaning agents containing descaling agents
- Abrasive cleaning agents, e.g. powder cleaners and cream cleaners
- Solvent-based cleaning agents
- Stainless steel cleaners
- Dishwasher detergent
- Oven sprays
- Glass cleaning agents
- Hard, abrasive sponges and brushes, e.g. pot scourers
- Dirt erasers
- Sharp metal scrapers

Appliance front

Remove any soiling immediately. If not, it might become impossible to remove and could cause the surface to alter or discolour.

Clean the front using a damp microfibre cloth or with a clean sponge and a solution of hot water and washing-up liquid. Wipe the surfaces dry using a soft cloth.

Cleaning and care

– Normal soiling

Clean the front using a damp microfibre cloth or with a clean sponge and a solution of hot water and washing-up liquid. Wipe the surfaces dry using a soft cloth.

– Heavy soiling

If necessary, the reverse of a non-scratching washing-up sponge can be used. Cleaning is made easier if soiling is first dampened with a solution of washing-up liquid. For very heavy soiling, the telescopic runners can be soaked in a solution of hot water and washing-up liquid for a maximum of 10 minutes.

The runners may appear discoloured or a lighter colour in places after they have been cleaned. This will not affect the functioning of the runners in any way.

Note:

When baking cakes with moist toppings or fillings e.g. fruit crumble, be careful not to let them spill over. Should this happen there is a danger of sticky fruit juices adhering to the runners and hindering or even preventing their movement in and out of the oven. Clean the runners as described above and very carefully use a soft nylon brush to clean the bearings inside the runners.

Lubricating the FlexiClip telescopic runners

If the lubrication on the telescopic runners dries out, they can be relubricated to ensure they continue to run smoothly.

A special lubricant is available from Miele.

Only use this special lubricant, as it is designed to withstand high temperatures in the oven. Other lubricants can harden and stick to the telescopic runners when they are heated.

50

Cleaning and care

Accessories

Baking tray, universal tray, anti-splash insert

(depending on model)

The surface has been treated with **PerfectClean**.

Please refer to the section on "PerfectClean" for information on cleaning and care.

Rack, runners

Use warm water and washing-up liquid or a non-abrasive stainless steel cleaning agent to clean the chrome-plated surface.

FlexiClip telescopic runners

(depending on model)

Do not clean FlexiClip telescopic runners in a dishwasher. This would remove the special lubricant.

To prevent damage to your appliance when cleaning, do not use:

- Abrasive cleaning agents, e.g. powder cleaners and cream cleaners
- Stainless steel cleaners
- Hard, abrasive sponges and brushes, e.g. pot scourers

When cleaning the runners, be very careful not to wash out the special lubricant in them.

Avoid frequent:

- soaking in hot soapy water,
- cleaning of the bearings.

FlexiClip telescopic runners are best cleaned after each use.

This prevents soiling drying on or being burnt on when the oven is used again.

If the oven is used frequently without being cleaned, it may become very difficult or even impossible to get clean again.

49

Cleaning and care

Oven interior

 Danger of burning.
Allow the oven to cool down before cleaning by hand.

It is best to clean the oven interior each time the oven is used. If this is not done, subsequent soiling from baking and roasting will become worse and make cleaning harder. In extreme cases this can cause damage to the surface material.

- To make cleaning easier,
- remove the oven door,
 - dismantle the door,
 - remove the FlexiClip runners (if available)
 - take out the side runners,
 - remove the catalytic enamelled back panel,
 - lower the top heating/grill element.

Instructions for doing this are given further on in this section.

Seal and inside of the oven door

Grease desposits on the seal between the inside of the oven door and the oven interior can cause it to become brittle and cracked.

It is best to clean the seal and the inside of the door after each programme with a cloth or a clean sponge and a solution of hot water with a little washing up liquid. Wipe dry using a soft cloth.

The enamelled **oven interior** has been treated with **PerfectClean**. Please refer to the section on "PerfectClean" for information on cleaning and care.

Due to the bright grey colour of the enamel, the oven interior appears very light and provides an optimal view of the food.

Moreover, any soiling can be easily spotted and removed after cooking.

The **back panel** is coated with dark grey **catalytic enamel**. See "Cleaning and care" for information on cleaning catalytic enamelled panels.

Cleaning and care

PerfectClean

PerfectClean treated surfaces

- Oven interior
- Baking tray (if available)
- Universal tray
- Anti-splash insert (if available)

This surface has very good **anti-stick properties** and is much **easier to keep clean** than conventional oven enamel, if cleaned regularly.

Food can be taken off it more easily, and soiling from baking and roasting is easier to remove.

The following notes on **cleaning and care** should ensure that the anti-stick and easy clean properties of PerfectClean last for many years.

PerfectClean surfaces can be treated as you would treat glass.

Food can be sliced or cut up on the PerfectClean surface in the same way as on a baking tray with conventional enamel.

Do not use a ceramic knife on PerfectClean surfaces as it could cause scratching.

 Allow the oven to cool down before cleaning by hand.
Danger of burning!

For **optimum performance** of PerfectClean enamel, it is important to clean the oven and accessories after each use.

The surfaces will become harder to clean and the anti-stick properties will deteriorate if soiling is not removed after each use and allowed to build up. In extreme cases cleaning may become impossible.

The following cause lasting damage to the surface structure and reduce the anti-stick effect and must not be used on PerfectClean surfaces:

- Abrasive cleaning agents, e.g. powder cleaners and cream cleaners,
- Cleaning agents for ceramic cooktops,
- Steel wool or metal scourers,
- Abrasive sponges, e.g. pot scourers or sponges which have been previously used with abrasive cleaning agents,
- Oven spray must not be used in a hot oven or left on for too long,
- PerfectClean enamelled items must not be washed in a dishwasher,
- Selective cleaning with mechanical cleaning agents.

Cleaning and care

Catalytic enamel surfaces


The back panel is coated with dark grey catalytic enamel. Soiling from oil and fat is burnt off this surface when very high temperatures are used in the oven. The higher the temperature, the more effective the process.

The catalytic coating becomes ineffective through using

- abrasive cleaning agents,
- hard brushes or abrasive sponges,
- oven sprays.

Remove the catalytic back panel from the oven before cleaning the PerfectClean oven surfaces with oven spray.

If the catalytic coated back panel is very heavily soiled with oil and grease, a film will develop on the oven surface during the cleaning process which can be wiped off with warm water and a little washing-up liquid once cool.

- Select Fan Plus 
 - Set the highest temperature setting. Run the oven for approx. 1 hour. The length of time will depend on the level of soiling.
- The timer can also be used to set the finish time. See "Entering a cooking duration".
- Finally, clean the PerfectClean surfaces and the inside of the door.
- Any remaining soiling will gradually disappear with each subsequent use of the oven at high temperatures.

Should the catalytic coating on the back panel become ineffective through improper use or heavy soiling, a replacement can be obtained from your Miele Chartered Agent or Miele.

Note that deposits of **spices, syrups and similar substances** are not removed from the catalytic coating by this process. These should be removed by hand whilst still fresh, using a mild solution of hot water and washing-up liquid applied with a soft sponge or brush. Remove the back panel from the oven to do this.

Soiling caused by **oil and grease splashes** are removed from catalytic coated surfaces when the oven is heated to a high temperature. To do this:

- Take all accessories out of the oven.
- Wipe large deposits of soiling from the oven interior and the inside of the door before starting the cleaning process to avoid them baking onto PerfectClean surfaces and becoming impossible to remove.

54

Cleaning and care

Stubborn soiling, e.g. from roasting, may need to be soaked first with a damp sponge to loosen it and, if necessary, a non-abrasive stainless steel spiral pad or a scraper suitable for glass can be used to remove it.

These cleaning tips will help to ensure that the surface is cleaned thoroughly. Should the PerfectClean surface be damaged by any of the above measures not being heeded, it will still retain the anti-stick qualities of standard enamel and be as easy to keep clean as standard enamel.

Note:

- Soiling such as spilt juices and cake mixtures is best removed whilst the oven or tray is still warm. Exercise caution, make sure the oven is not too hot - danger of burning.
 - Spilt fruit juices or roasting residues may cause lasting discolouration to the surfaces and can cause matt areas to appear.
- This discolouration is permanent but will not affect the efficiency of the enamel. Clean these following the instructions given above and do not use force to remove them.

Remove any residual cleaning agents with clean water as these will also hinder the anti-stick effect.

Normal soiling

Clean as soon as possible after each use with a dishcloth, soft sponge or a soft nylon brush, and a solution of hot water and a little washing-up liquid. If necessary, the reverse of a non-scratching washing-up sponge can be used. Cleaning is made easier if soiling is first dampened with a solution of washing-up liquid.

Stubborn soiling

Remove the catalytic back panel before using oven spray. The chemicals used in oven sprays will damage catalytic enamel, rendering it ineffective.

Allow the PerfectClean surfaces to cool down to room temperature before cleaning. Apply a proprietary oven cleaning spray (such as the Original Miele oven cleaner) and leave to take effect for approx. ten minutes. When using the Original Miele oven cleaner, the time stated on the packaging can be slightly extended if needed.

If necessary, the scouring pad on the back of a non-scratching washing-up sponge or a soft nylon brush can be used to loosen the soiling.

Repeat the process if necessary.

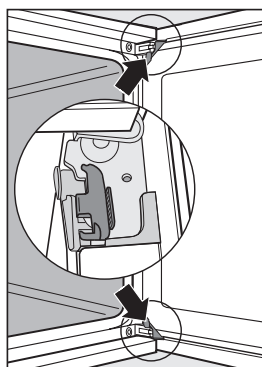
After cleaning, rinse thoroughly with clean water and then dry thoroughly.

53

Cleaning and care

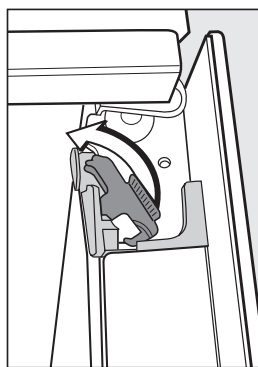
To remove the oven door

The oven door is connected to the oven by hinges.



Before removing the door, the locking clamps on both hinges have to be released.

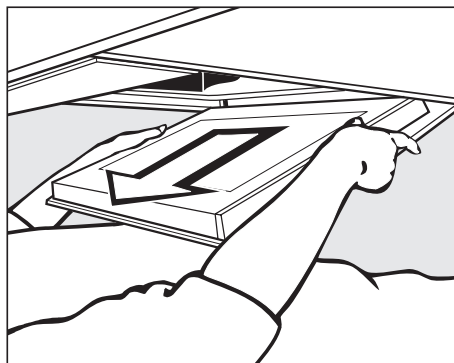
- Open the door fully.



- To release the locking clamps on the hinges, turn them upwards as far as they will go until they are at an angle.

- Then lift the door upwards as far as it will go.

Never attempt to pull the door off the hinge guides from a horizontal position. The hinges can flip back and cause damage to the appliance. Danger of injury!



- Hold the door securely at both sides and lift upwards off the hinge guides.

The door should be gripped firmly at the sides and not at the handle when being removed. The handle could break off and damage the door.

Make sure that you lift the door off evenly on both sides.

55

To dismantle the oven door

The oven door is made up of two panes of glass and has vents at the top and bottom.

When the oven is operating, air is circulated through the door to keep the outer pane cool.

If condensate has worked its way in between the glass panes, the door can be dismantled in order to clean in between the panes.

Clean the glass in the same way as you would clean the appliance front.

Do not use abrasive cleaners, hard sponges, brushes or sharp metal tools to clean glass as these can scratch the surface. Scratches can cause the glass to break.

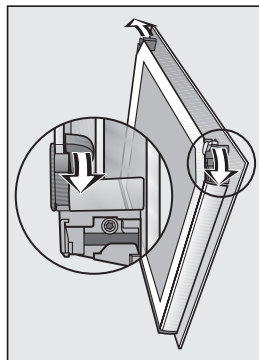
Do not use an oven spray. This will damage the surface of the aluminium surrounds.

Ensure that the glass panels are inserted the correct way round after cleaning, as each side of the pane has a different coating. Those facing the oven interior reflect the heat.

To avoid the risk of breakage, it is advisable to place the panes on a table protected by a soft cloth (e.g. a towel).

Always remove the oven door before dismantling it.

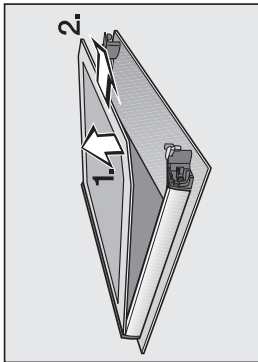
- Place the door on a protective surface (e.g. on a table cloth) to prevent it getting scratched. The door handle should line up with the edge of the table. Make sure the glass lies flat and does not get broken during cleaning.



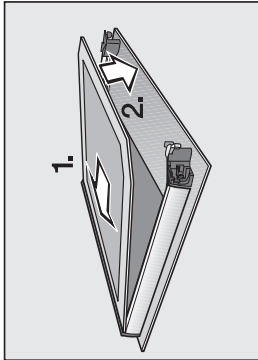
- Flip the glass pane retainers outwards to open them. You can now remove the inner panes.

56

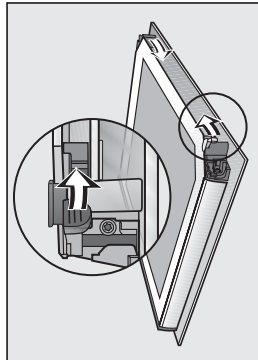
Cleaning and care



- **Gently** lift the inner pane up and out of the plastic strip.
- Clean the glass panes and other parts with a damp microfibre cloth or a clean sponge and a solution of hot water with a little washing-up liquid. Wipe dry using a soft cloth.
- To reassemble the door:



- Push the inner pane into the plastic strip and place it between the retainers. "Miele" must be visible at the top.

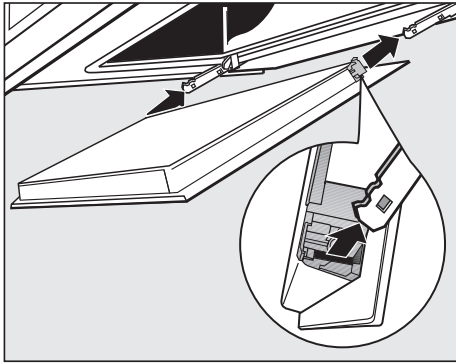


- Flip the glass pane retainers inwards to close them.

57

Cleaning and care

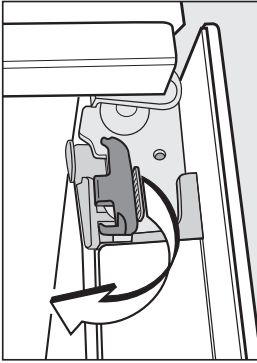
To refit the door



- Hold the door securely at both sides and carefully fit it back onto the hinge guides.

Make sure that the door goes back on straight.

- Open the door fully.



- Flip both locking clamps back up as far as they will go into a horizontal position.

It is essential that the locking clamps are flipped down when the door is refitted after cleaning. Otherwise, on closing the door, the hinges could work loose from the guide holes and this could result in damage to the door.

58

Cleaning and care

To remove the back panel

⚠ Danger of burning
The oven interior needs to have cooled down before you start handling anything inside it.

The back panel can be removed for cleaning if necessary.

See "Cleaning and care" for information on cleaning catalytic enamelled panels.

- Remove the runners.
- Loosen the screws in the back panel and take it out.

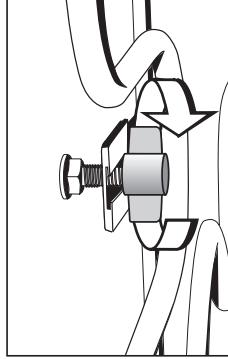
The oven must not be used without the back panel fitted. This could cause considerable injury.

Reassemble in the reverse order, carefully ensuring all parts are correctly in place.

To lower the top heat/grill element

⚠ Danger of burning
The oven interior needs to have cooled down before you start handling anything inside it.

- Remove the runners.



- Unscrew the wing nut. Gently lower the element.

Do not use force! This can damage the element.

Reassemble in the reverse order, carefully ensuring all parts are correctly in place.

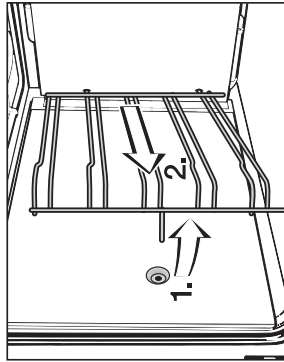
Make sure that the wing nut is screwed back on properly.

60

Cleaning and care

To remove the shelf runners

⚠ Danger of burning
The oven interior needs to have cooled down before you start handling anything inside it.

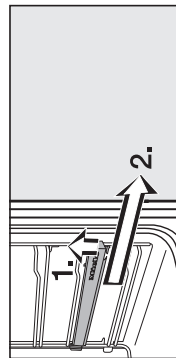


- Pull the runners forwards out of the holder and remove.

Reassemble in the reverse order, carefully ensuring all parts are correctly in place.

To remove the FlexiClip telescopic runners

⚠ Danger of burning
The oven interior needs to have cooled down before you start handling anything inside it.



- Lift the FlexiClip runner up at the front and pull it out along the shelf runner.

Refit the runners carefully as described in "Features".

59

Problem solving guide

With the aid of the following guide, minor problems can be easily corrected without contacting Miele.

If you can't remedy the problem yourself, please call Miele (see back cover for details).

Please note that a call-out charge will be applied for unnecessary service visits where the problem could have been rectified as described in these Operating instructions.

On no account open the appliance housing!

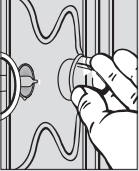

Installation, maintenance and repairs may only be carried out by a suitably qualified and competent person in strict accordance with current national and local safety regulations.

Repairs and other work by unqualified persons could be dangerous. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for unauthorised work. Ensure current is not supplied until after maintenance or repair work has been carried out

Problem	Possible cause and remedy
The display is dark.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check whether the mains fuse has tripped. If it has not, contact a qualified electrician or Miele.
The oven does not heat up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check whether a function and a temperature have been set. Check whether the mains fuse has tripped. If it has not, contact a qualified electrician or Miele.
0-00 is flashing in the display on ovens with a clock timer.	<p>All pre-set times have been lost due to power cut.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reset the time of day. Reset user programmes.
A noise can be heard after a cooking programme.	<p>The cooling fan continues to run for a while after the oven has been switched off to prevent any humidity building up in the oven, on the control panel or on the oven housing unit. When the temperature has fallen sufficiently, the fan switches off automatically.</p>

61

Problem solving guide

Problem	Possible cause and remedy
<p>The oven lighting doesn't work.</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disconnect the appliance from the electricity supply. Switch off and unplug at the socket, or remove the fuse, or switch off at the isolator as appropriate. Unscrew the lamp cover with a quarter-turn to the left and then pull downward from the housing. When purchasing a new lamp, take the old one with you to make sure you obtain the correct replacement (Osram 66725 AM/A, 230 V, 25 W, G9). Replace the lamp cover and tighten with a turn to the right. Connect the appliance to the electricity supply.
Cakes and biscuits are not cooked properly after following the times given in the chart.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the correct temperature has been set. Check if you have amended the recipe. The addition of more liquids or more eggs makes a moister mix which would require a longer baking time.
Browning is uneven.	<p>There will always be a slight unevenness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If browning is very uneven, check whether the temperature was set too high, or whether the correct shelf level was used. <p>With Conventional  check the colour and material of the baking tins being used. Light-coloured, shiny, or thin-walled tins are less suitable.</p>
There are spots like rust on the catalytic surfaces.	<p>When roasting on the rack, the circulating air sometimes picks up spices, which are then deposited on the oven interior walls. These residues are not removed by catalytic cleaning, and should be removed while fresh with a mild solution of hot water and washing-up liquid applied with a soft brush.</p>

62

After sales service and warranty

After sales service

In the event of any faults which you cannot remedy yourself, please contact

– your Miele Chartered Agent

or

– Miele.

You will find the contact details for Miele on the back cover of this manual.

When contacting Miele, please quote the model and serial number of your appliance.

These are given on the data plate which is located on the front of the oven cavity.

Warranty

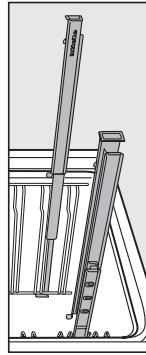
The warranty for this appliance is 2 years.

For further information, please refer to your warranty booklet.

Optional accessories

The following accessories may come as standard with some models. They are also available to order from Miele or your Miele Chartered Agent.

FlexiClip telescopic runners



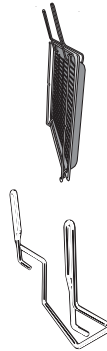
Up to five pairs of FlexiClip telescopic runners can be installed in the oven.

Baking tray, universal tray and rack

These items, supplied with your oven, are also available to order.

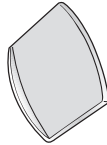
When ordering, please quote the model number of your oven.

Handle



The handle makes it easier to take the universal tray, baking tray and rack out of the oven, or to put them into it. The two prongs at the top go inside the tray or above the rack, and the U-shaped supports underneath.

Pizza stone



The pizza stone is ideal for items which need a well-baked base such as pizza, quiche, bread, bread rolls and savoury snacks.

The pizza stone is made from heat retaining fire brick and is glazed. Place it directly on the rack.

A paddle made of untreated wood is supplied with it for placing food on the pizza stone and taking it off.

Pizza dish



This circular pan is suitable for cooking pizzas, flat cakes made with yeast or whisked mixtures, sweet and savoury tarts, baked desserts, and can also be used for frozen cakes and pizzas.

The surface has been refined as PerfectClean enamel.

Electrical connection

Important

The appliance is supplied for connection to a 230 V, 50 Hz electricity supply.

The wires in the mains lead are coloured in accordance with the following code:

Green/yellow = earth

Blue = neutral

Brown = live

WARNING THIS APPLIANCE MUST BE EARTHED

When replacing the cable supplied with another cable or changing the connection, only cable type H 05 W-F or H 05 RR-F with a suitable cross-sectional area (CSA) may be used (available from Miele).

Test marks Electrical safety
. C-Tick Mark
Electrically suppressed
according to AS/NZS 1044

All electrical work should be undertaken by a suitably qualified and competent person in strict accordance with current national and local safety regulations. Installation, repairs and other work by unqualified persons could be dangerous. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for unauthorised work. Ensure power is not supplied to the appliance until after installation or repair work has been carried out.

The **voltage and rated load** are given on the data plate, visible below the oven interior, with the door open. Ensure that these match the household mains supply. Please quote this data, and the model and serial number when contacting Miele.

Connection of this appliance should be made via a fused connection unit or a suitable isolator, which complies with national and local safety regulations, and the on/off switch should be easily accessible after the appliance has been built in.

If the switch is not accessible after installation (depending on country) an additional means of disconnection must be provided for all poles.

For extra safety, it is advisable to install a residual current device (RCD). Please contact a qualified electrician for advice.

66

Optional accessories

Catalytic enamelled side walls and ceiling panel

The side walls are installed behind the shelf runners and protect the interior walls against soiling.

The ceiling panel is installed above the top heating/grill element.

When ordering, please quote the model number of your oven.

Original Miele all-purpose microfibre cloth

Light soiling and fingerprints can be easily removed with the microfibre cloth.

Original Miele oven cleaner

Suitable for removing stubborn soiling. It is not necessary to pre-heat the oven beforehand.

Gourmet oven dish

The gourmet oven dish can be placed in the oven directly on the shelf runners. It has non-tip safety notches like the universal tray to prevent it being pulled out too far.

It has an anti-stick coating.

It is available in two sizes:

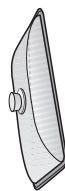
- HUB 5000-M (internal dimensions 38 x 22 x 8 cm)



- HUB 5000-XL (internal dimensions 38 x 35 x 8 cm)



Gourmet oven dish lid



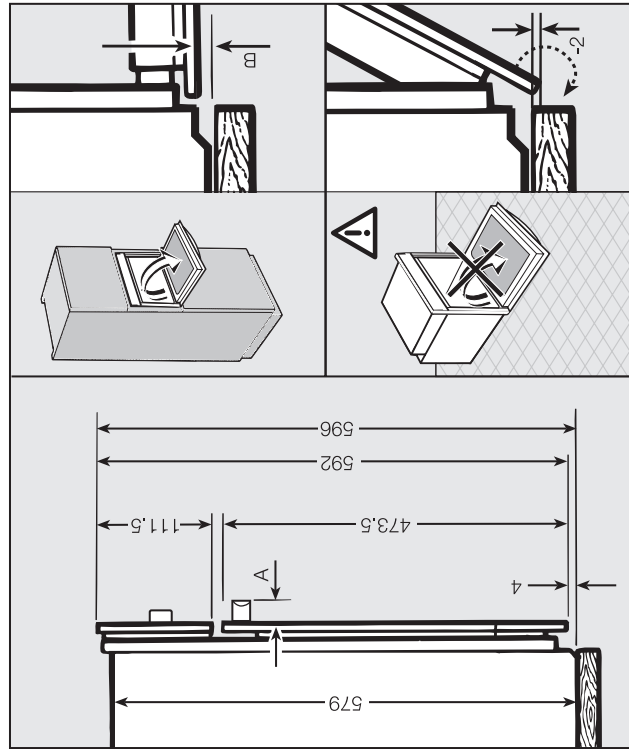
A lid is available separately.

When ordering a lid, please specify the gourmet oven dish it is to be used with (HUB 5000-M or XL).

65

Building-in diagrams

Front dimensions



- A** H 4700, H 4710: 53.2
H 4800, H 4810: 47.5
B Appliances with glass front: 2.2
Appliances with metal front: 1.2

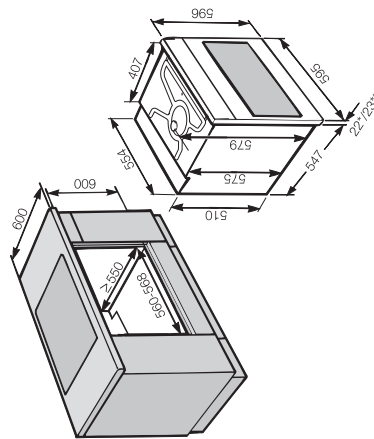
68

Building-in diagrams

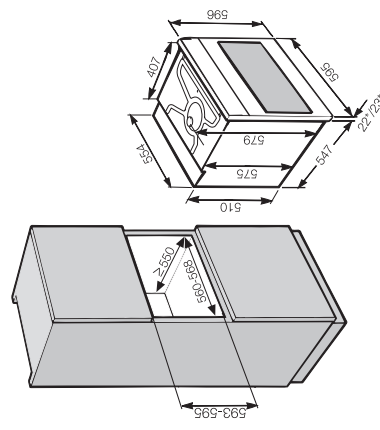
Dimensions are given in "mm".

Appliance dimensions and unit cut-out

Installation in a base unit



Installation in a tall unit



- * Appliances with glass front
** Appliances with metal front

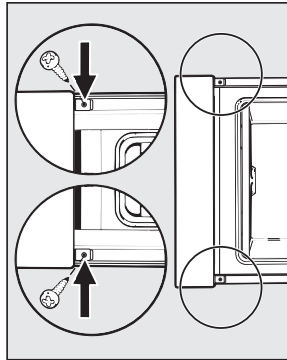
67

Installing the oven

- ⚠ The appliance must not be operated until it has been correctly installed in its housing unit. Otherwise it poses an electric shock hazard.
- Important: Do not fit insulation material inside the housing unit. This would hinder the intake of air to the appliance.
- When installing the appliance, do not lift it up by the door handle as this can damage the door.

Turn off the mains electricity supply to the isolator.

- Connect the mains cable from the oven to the isolator.
- Push the appliance into the oven housing unit and align it.



- Open the oven door and, using two screws, secure it to the side walls of the housing unit through the holes in the oven trim.

69

Miele

Miele Australia Pty. Ltd.

ABN 96 005 635 398

Melbourne:

1 Gilbert Park Drive

Knoxfield, VIC 3180

Telephone: (03) 9764 7130

Fax: (03) 9764 7149

Sydney:

3 Skyline Place

Frenchs Forest, NSW 2086

Telephone: (02) 8977 4230

Fax: (02) 8977 4249

Brisbane:

39 Harvey Street North

Eagle Farm, QLD 4009

Telephone: 1800 798 578

Fax: 1800 799 578

Adelaide:

83-85 Sir Donald Bradman Drive

Hilton, SA 5033

Telephone: 1800 018 770

Fax: 1800 799 578

Perth:

205-207 Stirling Highway

Claremont, WA 6010

Telephone: 1800 094 872

Fax: 1800 799 578

www.miele.com.au

Miele New Zealand Limited

Unit L, 10-20 Sylvia Park Road

Mt. Wellington, 1060, Auckland

New Zealand

Telephone: 0800 264 353

Fax: 0800 463 453

www.miele.co.nz

Germany

Miele & Cie. KG

Carl-Miele-Straße 29

33332 Gütersloh

Alteration rights reserved / 22 / 4111

(H 4700 B; H 4710 B; H 4800 B; H 4810 B)

CE

M-Nr. 07 856 420 / 05

Miele

Operating instructions



Gas cooktops KM 2012

To avoid the risk of accidents or damage to the appliance it is **essential** to read these instructions before it is installed and used for the first time.

en - AU, NZ

M.-Nr. 07 143 630

Contents

Guide to the appliance	5
Cooktop	5
Burners	6
Accessories supplied	7
Warning and Safety instructions	8
Caring for the environment	14
Before using for the first time	15
Operation	16
Switching on	16
Regulating the flame	17
Switching off	17
Suitable pans	18
Wok ring	19
Safety cut-out	20
Cleaning and care	21
Problem solving guide	25
Optional accessories	27
Safety instructions for installation	28
Safety clearances	29
Appliance and building-in dimensions	31
Installation	32
General installation tips	33

3

Contents

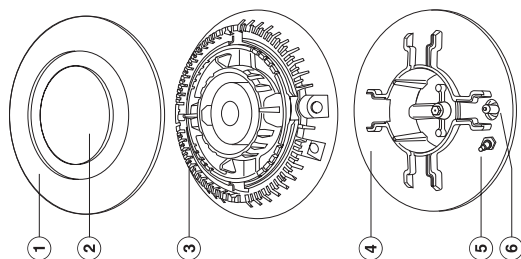
Electrical connection	34
Gas connection	35
Burner ratings	37
Conversion to another type of gas	38
Jet table	38
Changing the jets	39
To change the main jet	39
To change the small jet	40
After changing the jets	41
After sales service, data plate	42

4

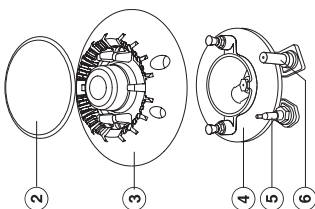
Guide to the appliance

Burners

Wok burner



Small, medium and large burners

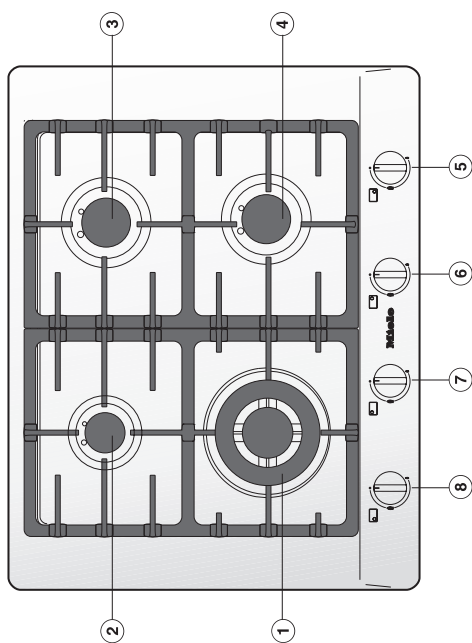


- ① Burner ring
- ② Burner cap
- ③ Burner head
- ④ Burner base
- ⑤ Ignition safety device
- ⑥ Ignitor

6

Guide to the appliance

Cooktop



- ① Wok burner
- ② Small burner
- ③④ Medium burners

- Controls:
- ⑤ Front right
- ⑥ Rear right
- ⑦ Rear left
- ⑧ Front left

5

Guide to the appliance

Accessories supplied

The accessories supplied with your appliance as well as a range of optional ones are available to order from Miele (see "Optional accessories").

Wok ring



The wok ring supplied gives additional stability to the wok, especially to woks with a rounded base.

Warning and Safety instructions

Correct application

- ▲ This appliance is designed for domestic use and for use in similar environments by guests in hotel or motel rooms, bed & breakfasts and other typical living quarters. This does not include common/shared facilities or commercial facilities within hotels, motels or bed & breakfasts.
- ▲ This gas cooktop must only be used as described in these instructions. Any other usage is at the owner's risk and could be dangerous. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage resulting from incorrect or improper use or operation.
- ▲ The appliance is not suitable for outdoor use.
- ▲ This gas cooktop is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they are supervised whilst using it or have been given instruction concerning its use by a person responsible for their safety.

This appliance complies with all relevant local and national safety requirements. Inappropriate use can, however, lead to personal injury and damage to property.

To avoid the risk of accidents and damage to the appliance, please read these instructions carefully before using it for the first time. They contain important notes on installation, safety, use and maintenance.

Keep these instructions in a safe place and ensure that new users are familiar with the contents. Pass them on to any future owner.

Do not modify this appliance.

Warning and Safety instructions

Safety with children

- ▲ This appliance is only intended for use by adults who have read these instructions. This appliance is not a toy! To avoid the risk of injury, keep children well away and do not allow them to play with it or to use the controls. They will not understand the potential dangers posed by it. They should be supervised whenever you are working in the kitchen.
- ▲ Older children may use the appliance only when its operation has been clearly explained to them and they are able to use it safely, recognising the dangers of misuse.
- ▲ The appliance gets hot when in use and remains hot for quite a while after being switched off. To safeguard against burning, keep children well away from the appliance at all times.
- ▲ Do not store anything which might arouse a child's interest in storage areas above or next to the appliance. Otherwise they could be tempted into climbing onto the appliance with the risk of burning themselves.
- ▲ Keep all pans out of reach of children. Turn pan handles inwards away from the edge of the cooktop. Danger of burning or scalding! Special cooktop guards are available from good retail outlets.

- ▲ Packaging, e.g. cling film, polystyrene and plastic wrappings, must be kept out of the reach of babies and young children. Danger of suffocation! Dispose of or recycle all packaging safely as soon as possible.

9

Warning and Safety instructions

Technical safety

- ▲ Before installation, check the appliance for visible signs of damage. Do not install and use a damaged appliance. A damaged appliance is dangerous.
- ▲ The electrical safety of this appliance can only be guaranteed when continuity is complete between the appliance and an effective earthing system which complies with current local and national safety regulations. It is most important that this basic safety requirement is present and tested regularly and, where there is any doubt, the household wiring system should be inspected by a qualified electrician. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for the consequences of an inadequate earthing system (e.g. electric shock).
- ▲ Before connecting the appliance to the mains supply, make sure that the voltage and frequency details given on the data plate correspond to the on-site electricity supply, otherwise the appliance could be damaged. Consult a qualified electrician if in any doubt.
- ▲ The connection to the gas supply must be carried out by a suitably qualified and competent person in accordance with current local and national safety regulations. If the appliance is supplied without a plug, or if the plug is removed, it must be connected to the mains electricity supply by a suitably qualified and competent electrician in strict accordance with current local and national safety regulations. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage caused by incorrect installation or connection.
- ▲ For safety reasons, this appliance may only be used when it has been built in.
- ▲ Never open the housing of the appliance.
- ▲ Tampering with electrical connections or components and mechanical parts is highly dangerous to the user and can cause operational faults.
- ▲ Installation, maintenance and repairs may only be carried out by a Miele authorised, suitably qualified and competent person in strict accordance with current national and local safety regulations.
- ▲ Repairs and other work by unauthorised and unqualified persons could be dangerous. Miele cannot be held liable for unauthorised work.

10

Warning and Safety instructions

- ▶ The gas cooktop must be disconnected from the gas supply and mains electricity before repairs and maintenance work is carried out. It is only completely isolated from the electricity supply when:
 - the mains fuse is disconnected,
 - the screw-out fuse is removed (in countries where this is applicable),
 - it is switched off at the wall socket and the plug is withdrawn from the socket, or it is switched off at the isolator.
- ▶ While the appliance is under warranty, repairs should only be undertaken by a service technician authorised by Miele. Otherwise the manufacturer's warranty will be invalidated.
- ▶ Faulty components must only be replaced by genuine Miele original spare parts. The manufacturer can only guarantee the safety of the appliance when Miele replacement parts are used.
- ▶ If the connection cable is damaged, it must be replaced by a suitably qualified electrician with a specialist connection cable of type H 05 VV-F (pvc insulated), available from Miele.
- ▶ Do not connect the appliance to the mains electricity supply by a multi-socket unit or an extension lead. These do not guarantee the required safety of the appliance (e.g. danger of overheating).
- ▶ Do not use the gas cooktop if it is faulty. Switch it off immediately, disconnect it from the mains electricity and the gas supply, and call Miele.
- ▶ In areas which may be subject to infestation by cockroaches or other vermin, pay particular attention to keeping the appliance and its surroundings in a clean condition at all times. Any damage caused by cockroaches or other vermin will not be covered by the warranty.

11

Warning and Safety instructions

Correct use

- ▶ The appliance gets hot when in use and remains hot for quite a while after being switched off. Do not touch it whilst it could still be hot.
- ▶ When using a rangehood above the cooktop, ensure that the burner is always covered with a pan when in use. Otherwise flames could be drawn up by the suction of the rangehood, parts of which could then be damaged or even set on fire.
- ▶ Do not leave the cooktop unattended whilst it is being used. Boiling fat or oil could ignite and cause a fire.
- ▶ If oil or fat does catch fire, do not attempt to put out the flames with water. Use a suitable fire blanket, saucepan lid, damp towel or similar to smother the flames.
- ▶ Do not use the cooktop to heat up the room. Due to the high temperatures radiated, objects near the appliance could catch fire.
- ▶ For added protection, it is advisable to use heat-resistant pot holders or gloves when using the appliance. Ensure that they do not come into contact with the flames. Do not use large cloths, tea towels or similar as the ends could touch the flames and catch fire.
- ▶ Take care not to let these items get damp or wet as this causes heat to transfer through the material more quickly with the risk of scalding or burning yourself.
- ▶ Do not flambé under a rangehood. The flames could set the rangehood on fire.
- ▶ Do not use the appliance as a resting place for anything else. The article could melt or catch fire if residual heat is still present or if the appliance is switched on by mistake.
- ▶ Do not cover the appliance, e.g. with a cloth, kitchen foil, etc. This could be a fire hazard if the appliance is switched on by mistake.
- ▶ Do not use plastic or aluminium foil containers. These melt at high temperatures and could catch fire.
- ▶ Do not heat up unopened tins of food on the cooktop as pressure will build up in the tin, causing it to explode. This could result in injury and scalding or damage to the cooktop.
- ▶ Make sure all the components of the gas burners have been correctly assembled before switching on.
- ▶ Pans must be the correct size for the burner they are used on (see "Pans"). A pan which is too small will be unstable on the pan support. If the pan diameter is too large, flames can spread out to the sides and damage or burn the worktop, wall claddings or surrounding units and also parts of the cooktop. Miele will not accept liability for any damage resulting from such incorrect use.
- ▶ Ensure that the flames from the burner do not spread out beyond the base and up the sides of the pan.

12

Warning and Safety instructions

- ▲ Unless the pan manufacturer states that you can do so, do not use pans with very thin bases on this cooktop, and never heat up empty pans as they could get damaged. This could also damage the appliance.
- ▲ Always use the pan support supplied. Never place a pan on the burner itself.
- ▲ Do not use or store flammable materials in the appliance storage drawer or near the appliance.
- ▲ Do not spray aerosols in the vicinity of this appliance while it is in operation.
- ▲ Remove splashes of fat and other food debris from the surface as soon as possible. These are a fire hazard.
- ▲ Replace the pan supports carefully to avoid scratching the surface of the cooktop.
- ▲ Using the gas cooktop will cause a build-up of heat and moisture in the room in which it is installed. Ensure that the room has sufficient natural or mechanical means of ventilation, e.g. a rangehood.
- ▲ If the cooktop is used for very long periods of time, additional ventilation of the room may be necessary, e.g. by opening windows or doors, or running the rangehood on the highest setting.
- ▲ When using an electrical appliance, e.g. a hand-held mixer, near the gas cooktop, ensure that the connection cable doesn't come into contact with the hot cooktop. The insulation on the cable could become damaged, giving rise to an electric shock hazard.
- ▲ Always ensure that food is sufficiently cooked or reheated. Some foods may contain micro-organisms which are only destroyed by thorough cooking at a sufficiently high temperature for long enough. Therefore, when cooking or reheating food such as poultry, it is particularly important that the food is completely cooked through. If in doubt, select a longer cooking or reheating time.
- ▲ Do not use pans that are large enough to cover more than one burner. The resulting build-up of heat could damage the appliance.
- ▲ Avoid allowing liquids or foods containing salt to spill onto the cooktop. If salty foods or liquids do get on the cooktop, they should be removed as soon as possible to avoid the risk of corrosion.
- ▲ If the cooktop is built-in behind a furniture door, it must only be operated when the door is open. Close the furniture door only once the appliance has been switched off and the residual heat indicators have gone out.
- ▲ If the appliance has not been used for a long period of time, it should be thoroughly cleaned before it is used again. It is also advisable to have the appliance tested by a qualified person for safety.

Miele cannot be held liable for damage caused by non-compliance with these Warning and Safety instructions.

13

Caring for the environment

Disposal of the packing material

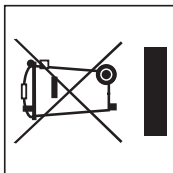
The transport and protective packing has been selected from materials which are environmentally friendly for disposal and can normally be recycled.

Ensure that any plastic wrappings, bags, etc. are disposed of safely and kept out of the reach of babies and young children. Danger of suffocation.

Rather than just throwing these materials away, please ensure they are offered for recycling.

Disposal of your old appliance or machine

Electrical and electronic appliances / machines often contain materials which, if handled or disposed of incorrectly, could be potentially hazardous to human health and to the environment. They are, however, essential for the correct functioning of your appliance or machine. Therefore, please do not dispose of your old machine or appliance with your household waste.



Please dispose of it at your local community waste collection / recycling centre and ensure that it presents no danger to children while being stored for disposal.

It should be unplugged from the mains electricity supply and disconnected from the gas supply by a competent person.

The plug must be rendered useless and the cable cut off directly behind the appliance or the machine to prevent misuse.

14

Before using for the first time

Please adhere the extra data plate for the appliance supplied with this documentation in the space provided in the "After sales service" section of this booklet.

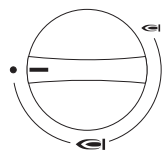
Cleaning for the first time

- Remove any protective foil and adhesive labels.
- Clean all removable parts of the burners with a solution of warm water and a small amount of washing-up liquid applied with a soft sponge. Dry all parts thoroughly after cleaning and then reassemble the burners (see "Cleaning and care - Burners").
- Clean the stainless steel cooktop with a damp cloth, and then wipe dry.

The metal components have a protective coating which may give off a slight smell when heated up for the first time. The smell and any vapours will dissipate after a short time, and do not indicate a faulty connection or appliance.

15

Operation



The control is used to ignite the burner and to regulate the strength of the flame.

- The gas supply is turned off

↑ Strong flame

↓ Weak flame

The burners can only be switched on by pressing in the appropriate control and turning it anti-clockwise, and switched off by turning the control clockwise.

The following will cause damage to the appliance:

- Switching on the burner without pressing the control down,
- Switching the burner on by turning the control clockwise,
- Switching the burner off by turning the control anti-clockwise.

The manufacturer will not accept liability for any damage resulting from incorrect operation.

Switching on

⚠ Do not leave the appliance unattended whilst it is being used.

- The control for the burner required must be pressed in and turned anti-clockwise to the large flame symbol to switch on.

A spark is automatically produced on all burners when a control knob is activated. This is completely normal and does not indicate a fault with the appliance.

- When the flame ignites, keep the control pressed in for 8-10 seconds, and then let it go.
- If the flame goes out turn the control to "●" and wait for at least 1 minute before trying to ignite it again. If necessary keep the control pressed in for longer.
- If the burner does not ignite after a second attempt turn the control back to "●" and go to the "Problem solving guide" for advice.

16

Suitable pans

Burner	Min. pan base diameter in cm
Small burner	10
Medium burner	12
Large burner	14
Wok burner	14
	Max. diameter at top of pan in cm
Small burner	22
Medium burner	22
Large burner	24
Wok burner	24

- Refer to the chart above and ensure that the pan diameter falls within the minimum and maximum diameters given for the burner you are using. A pan base which is too small will be unstable on the pan support. If the pan diameter is too large, flames can spread out to the sides and damage or burn the worktop, wall claddings or surrounding units and also parts of the cooktop. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for this type of damage.



- Wide, shallow pans are preferable to tall, narrow ones. They will heat up faster.
- Select pans which are suitable for the burner they are to be used on. In general: use larger diameter pans on the large burners, and smaller diameter pans on the small burners.
- Pans with thick bases are preferable as these distribute heat more evenly. With thin bases, there is a danger of food overheating in places. Stir the food frequently.
- Any heat-resistant pans can be used on a gas burner.

18

Operation

In the event of a power cut

- If there is an interruption to the electricity supply the gas can be ignited with a match.
- Press in the relevant control and turn it anti-clockwise to the large gas symbol.
- Hold the control pressed in and light the gas at the burner with a match.
- Keep the control pressed in for a further 8-10 seconds and then release it.

Regulating the flame

The burners can be regulated at any level between the strongest and weakest flame.

Control the flame so that it does not spread out beyond the sides of the pan. As the outer part of the flame is much hotter than the centre, the tips of the flames should stay beneath the pan base. Flame tips which extend beyond the sides of the pan merely warm up the air in the room and can also damage pan handles and increase the danger of injury.



Switching off

- Turn the control clockwise to position "●". This stops the flow of gas and the flame goes out.

17

Safety cut-out

This appliance is fitted with a thermoelectric ignition safety device which cuts off the supply of gas to a burner if the flame goes out, for example if food has boiled over, or if there was a sudden draught.

- To use the burner again, turn the control clockwise to the "●" position, and then switch it back on as normal.

The safety cut-out operates independently from the electricity supply. This means that it will still work if the cooktop is used during a power cut.

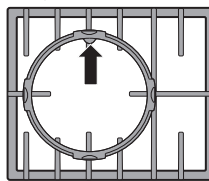
20

Suitable pans

- Always place the pan on the pan support supplied with the cooktop. Do not place a pan directly on top of the burner.
- Remember when purchasing new pans that manufacturers usually refer to the diameter at the top of the pan in their documentation.
- Use a lid whenever possible to minimise heat loss.
- When using a wok make sure that the base does not touch the burner. A distance of 1 cm should be maintained between the burner and the base of the wok pan above it.

Place pans flat on the pan support to ensure they do not tip over. Slight tilting cannot always be avoided.

Wok ring



Use the wok ring supplied to give additional stability, especially to woks with a rounded base.

Make sure that the wok ring is securely in position to prevent it from slipping.
(See diagram).

19

Cleaning and care

⚠ Do not use a steam cleaning appliance to clean this appliance. The steam could reach the electrical components and cause a short circuit.

- The appliance should be cleaned regularly, preferably after each use. Allow the appliance to cool down to a safe temperature before cleaning.
- To avoid water marks and limescale deposits, use a soft cloth to dry surfaces that have been cleaned with water.
- Stubborn soiling should be soaked first.
- Food that has boiled over can cause discolouration of the burner parts and the stainless steel cooktop. **Remove any soiling immediately.**
- The surfaces of the two burner caps will become more matt with time. This is quite normal and will not affect the operation of the cooktop.

To avoid damaging the outer surfaces of your appliance, do not use:

- cleaning agents containing soda, alkalines, ammonia, acids or chlorides,
- cleaning agents containing descaling agents,
- stain or rust removers,
- abrasive cleaning agents, e.g. powder cleaners and cream cleaners,
- solvent-based cleaning agents,
- dishwasher cleaner,
- grill and oven cleaners,
- glass cleaning agents,
- hard, abrasive brushes or sponges, e.g. pot scourers, brushes or sponges which have been previously used with abrasive cleaning agents,
- sharp pointed objects (these can damage the seal between the frame and the worktop).

21

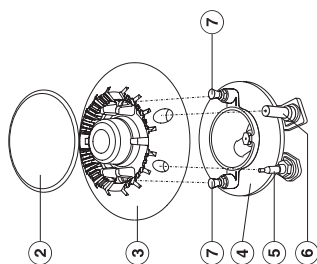
Cleaning and care

	Cleaning	Notes
Stainless steel surfaces	Clean stainless steel surfaces using an Original Miele all purpose microfibre cloth or with a solution of warm water and a little washing-up liquid applied with a soft sponge. If required, clean the appliance with the rough side of a sponge and a few drops of the Original Miele ceramic and stainless steel cooktop cleaner (see "Optional accessories"). Apply with an even pressure following the direction of the "grain". The Original Miele care product for stainless steel can be used after cleaning to help keep your appliance looking good (see "Optional accessories"). Apply sparingly with a soft cloth following the instructions on the packaging.	Printed surfaces (Flame symbols) The printing can be damaged if soiling (e.g. food or fluids that contained salt, olive oil) are not removed immediately. Remove any soiling immediately. Do not use any stainless steel cleaner on printed surfaces. This would rub off the print.
Pan support	Remove the cover. These areas should only be cleaned with a microfibre cloth or with a solution of warm water and a little washing-up liquid applied with a soft sponge. If necessary, the reverse side of a non-scratching washing-up sponge can be used.	Stubborn soiling should be soaked first. Not dishwasher safe.
Control knob	Control knobs should only be cleaned with a microfibre cloth or with a solution of warm water and a little washing-up liquid applied with a soft sponge.	Not dishwasher safe.
Burner caps	Burner caps should only be cleaned with a microfibre cloth or with a solution of warm water and a little washing-up liquid applied with a soft sponge. If necessary, the reverse side of a non-scratching washing-up sponge can be used.	Not dishwasher safe.
Burner head PerfectClean	Burner heads should only be cleaned with a microfibre cloth or with a solution of warm water and a little washing-up liquid applied with a soft sponge. If necessary, the reverse side of a non-scratching washing-up sponge can be used.	The surface of the burner heads is treated with PerfectClean enamel, which has very good anti-stick properties and is easy to clean . Not dishwasher safe. Make sure that the flame sifits are clean and completely dry. Do not let the ignitor get wet. If it gets wet, it will not spark.
Ignitor Ignition safety device	The ignitor and ignition safety device should be very carefully wiped clean using a well wrung out cloth.	

22

Cleaning and care

To assemble the small, medium and large burners

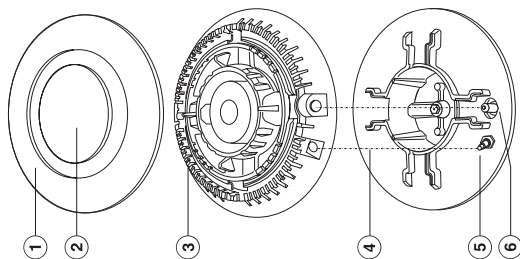


- Place the burner head ③ onto the burner base ④ so the ignition safety device ⑤, the ignitor ⑥ and the retaining pins ⑦ fit into their respective holes in the burner head.
 - Position the burner cap ② onto the burner head ③ so that the retaining pins fit into their respective recesses. Gently twist the burner cap clockwise or anticlockwise until it locks into position.
When correctly positioned it will not slide about.
- Important: replace parts in the correct order after cleaning.

23

Cleaning and care

To assemble the wok burner



- Place burner head ③ onto burner base ④ so that the ignition safety device ⑤ and the ignitor ⑥ extend through their respective holes in the burner head.
 - Replace the burner ring ①.
 - Replace the burner cap ②.
- Important: replace parts in the correct order after cleaning.

24

Problem solving guide

⚠ Repairs to the gas and electrical components of this appliance must only be carried out by a suitably qualified and competent person to ensure safety. Repairs and other work by unqualified persons could be dangerous. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for unauthorised work.

What to do if...

... the burner does not ignite after several attempts.

Check whether

- the burner is correctly assembled.
- the gas supply tap is turned on.
- the burner is dry and clean.
- the flame slits are dry and unblocked.

... the gas flame goes out after being lit.

During the ignition process, the flames need to touch the ignition safety device so that it heats up.

If the flames do not touch the ignition safety device, check if

- the burner cover is correctly in position.
- there is no soiling on the ignition safety device. If there is, remove it carefully (see "Cleaning and care").

25

Problem solving guide

... the ignitor on the burner does not spark.

Check whether

- the mains fuse has blown. If it has, contact a qualified electrician or Miele.
- food deposits have lodged themselves between the ignitor and the burner cap, or on the ignition safety device. Remove any food deposits carefully (see "Cleaning and care").
- food has adhered to the ignition safety device. Remove any food deposits carefully (see "Cleaning and care").

... the flame suddenly looks different.

Check that the burner is correctly assembled.

26

Optional accessories

Miele offers a range of useful accessories, as well as cleaning and conditioning products for your appliance.

These can be ordered via the internet at www.miele-shop.com (depending on country).



These products can also be obtained from Miele (see back cover for contact details) or from your Miele Chartered Agent.

Cleaning products

Original Miele ceramic and stainless steel cooktop cleaner 250 ml



Removes heavy soiling, limescale deposits and light discolouration

Original Miele care product for stainless steel 250 ml



Removes water marks, flecks and finger prints.
Helps keep the appliance looking good for longer.

Original Miele all purpose microfibre cloth



Removes finger marks and light soiling.

Safety instructions for installation

Fit the wall units and rangehood before fitting the cooktop to avoid damaging the surface.

▲ Ensure that the gas pipe and electrical cable are installed in such a way that they do not touch any parts of the appliance which become hot. This could cause damage.

▲ This appliance must not be connected to a gas flue. It must be installed and connected in accordance with current installation regulations.

▲ The electrical cable and a flexible gas connection pipe must be installed in such a way so that they do not come into contact with any moving kitchen parts (e.g. a drawer), and cannot become trapped.

▲ Observe carefully the safety distances given on the following pages.

All dimensions in this instruction booklet are given in mm.

⚠ This appliance must be installed and connected to services in accordance with local and national safety and building regulations.

▲ The room in which the gas cooktop is installed must be at least 20 m³ in size with a door or window in it which can be opened to the outside air.

▲ The veneer or laminate coatings of worktops (or adjacent kitchen units) must be treated with 100 °C heat-resistant adhesive which will not dissolve or distort.

Any backmoulds must be of heat-resistant material.

▲ An electric fryer must not be installed directly next to a gas cooktop, as the gas flames could ignite the fat in the fryer. It is essential to maintain a distance of at least 300 mm between these two appliances.

▲ A gas cooktop may not be built in over a fridge, fridge freezer, freezer, dishwasher, washing machine or tumble dryer.

▲ This appliance must not be installed and used in mobile installations such as ships etc.

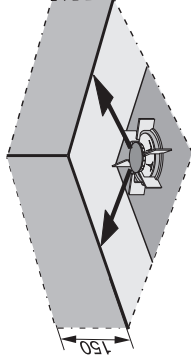
Safety clearances

Before installing the appliance check that the location provides the required clearances from combustible material and if necessary provide protection to adjacent surfaces as required by regulations.

The minimum **side clearance** from a cooktop to a combustible surface* shall be a 300 mm horizontal distance from the periphery of any burner.

The minimum **rear clearance** from a cooktop to a

- **combustible surface*** shall be a 200 mm horizontal distance from the periphery of any gas burner (AS 5601).
- **non-combustible surface** or splashback shall be a 50 mm horizontal distance from the rear edge of the cooktop.



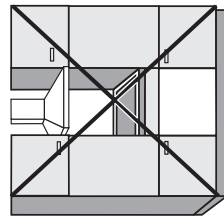
* Combustible surface:
The surface of a material that is capable of catching fire and burning at temperatures exceeding 50 K above ambient.

30

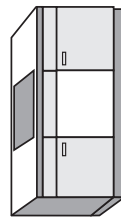
Safety clearances

Side / rear clearances to the cooktop

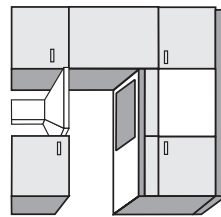
Ideally the cooktop should be installed with plenty of space on either side. There may be a wall at the rear and a tall unit or wall at one side. On the other side, however, no unit or divider should stand higher than the cooktop (see illustrations).



Not allowed

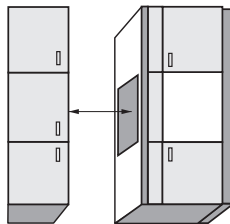


Recommended



Not recommended

Safety clearance above the cooktop



A minimum safety clearance must be maintained between the cooktop and the rangehood above it. See the rangehood manufacturer's operating and installation instructions for details.

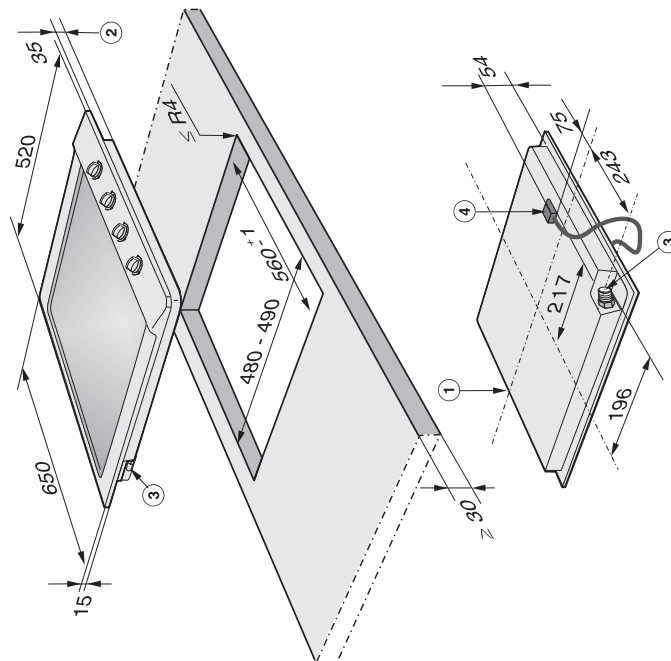
If the manufacturer's instructions are not available for the rangehood, a minimum safety clearance of at least 760 mm above the burner cap must be maintained. For any flammable objects, e.g. utensil rails, wall units etc. a minimum clearance of at least 760 mm above the burner cap must be maintained between them and the cooktop below.

When two or more appliances are installed together below a rangehood, e.g. a gas cooktop and an induction cooktop combiset, which have different safety clearances given in the installation instructions, you should select the greater clearance of the two.

29

Appliance and building-in dimensions

KM 2012



- ① Front
- ② Building-in depth
- ③ Gas connection R 1/2" ISO 7-1
- ④ Mains connection box with mains connection cable, L = 2,000 mm

31

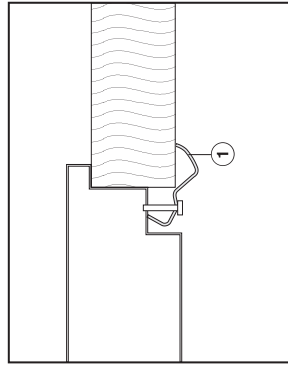
Installation

Preparing the worktop

- Make the worktop cut-out following the dimensions applicable. Remember to maintain a **minimum safety clearance** from the **back wall**, as well as from any **tall unit or side wall** to the right or left of the cooktop. See "Safety clearances".
- Seal the cut surfaces with a suitable heat-resistant sealant to avoid swelling caused by moisture.

If, during installation, you find that the seals on the corners of the frame are not flush with the worktop surface, the corner radius ($\leq R4$) can be carefully scribed to fit.

Installing the cooktop

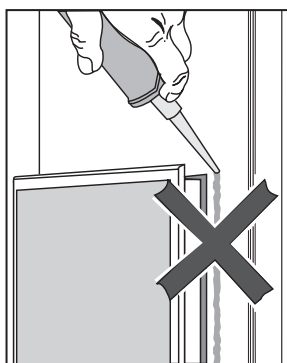


- Feed the connection cable down through the cut-out.
- Place the cooktop in the cut-out without securing it.
- Connect the cooktop to the mains (see "Electrical connection").
- Connect the appliance to the gas supply (see "Gas connection").
- Secure the appliance using the brackets ① supplied.

32

General installation tips

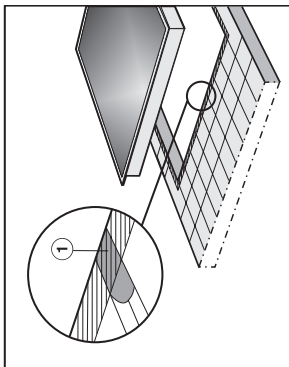
Sealant



Do not use any sealant unless expressly instructed to do so. The sealing strip under the edge of the top part of the countertop provides a sufficient seal for the countertop.

Do not use sealant between the frame of the top part of the countertop and the countertop. This could cause difficulties if the countertop ever needs to be taken out for servicing and possibly result in damage to the frame or the countertop.

Tiled countertop



The grouting ① and the shaded area underneath the countertop frame must be smooth and even so that the frame sits evenly and the sealing strip underneath the top part of the countertop provides a sufficient seal for the countertop.

Tiled countertops must be a minimum 5 mm thick to ensure the surface temperatures of the combustible surfaces underneath the tiles do not exceed 50 K above ambient.

Electrical connection

All electrical work should be carried out by a suitably qualified and competent person in strict accordance with national and local safety regulations.

If the connection cable is damaged, it must be replaced by a suitably qualified electrician with a special connection cable of type H 05 V V-F (pvc insulated), available from Miele.

For extra safety it is advisable to install a residual current device (RCD), with a trip current of 30 mA.

Connection for each appliance should be made via a suitable isolator.

Note: Isolation of the appliance is required when the appliance safety device is activated. Ensure the isolating switch is easily accessible and visible.

The data plate gives the necessary data for connection.

**WARNING
THIS APPLIANCE MUST BE
EARTHED**

Important


The wires in the mains lead are coloured in accordance with the following code:

Green/yellow = earth

Blue = neutral

Brown = live

As the colours of the wires in the mains lead of this appliance may not correspond with the coloured markings identifying the terminals in your plug proceed as follows:

- The wire which is coloured green and yellow must be connected to the terminal in the plug which is marked with the letter E or by the earth symbol  or coloured green or green and yellow.
- The wire which is coloured blue must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter N or coloured black.
- The wire which is coloured brown must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter A or coloured red.

Gas connection

This appliance is set up for connection to natural gas.

See adhesive label on the appliance:

G = NG (natural gas)

LP = ULPG (Propane/Butane)

Jets are supplied for conversion to ULPG (Propane/Butane) gas.

If the appropriate jets have not been supplied with the appliance you will need to contact your Chartered Agent or Miele.

Conversion to another type of gas is described under the relevant Section.

Connection to the gas supply, or conversion from one type of gas to another should only be undertaken by an approved gas fitter, who is responsible for correct functioning of the appliance when installed. Every appliance should have its own isolating valve.

The gas connection must be installed so that connection can be made either from inside or outside the kitchen unit, and the isolating valve must be easily accessible and visible (by opening one of the kitchen unit doors, if necessary).

Check with your local gas supplier about the type of gas and its calorific value, and compare this information with the type of gas quoted on the cooktop data plate.

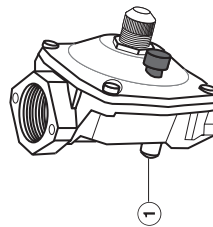
Gas connection

The gas connection must be in accordance with national and local regulations.
The relevant building regulations must also be observed.

Natural gas / liquid gas

During installation the gas connection must be positioned so that it is not adversely heated when the appliance is in operation.

Pressure Test Point ①. This is provided on the gas regulator (supplied for natural gas).



- Loosen the screw in the test point until it is free in its housing. The screw is retained in this position.
- Connect the hose from the pressure gauge.
- Reassemble one of the large burners, turn on the gas and manually light the burners.

Gas pressure must be set by the approved gas fitter as shown on the data plate:

Natural gas	1.0 kPa
ULPG (Propane/Butane)	2.75 kPa

- Disconnect gauge and screw in the test point screw.

The Gas Regulator must be set with the largest burner operating at maximum setting.

Once the gas cooktop has been installed it is essential to check that neither the gas pipe nor the electricity cable is in contact with hot parts of the appliance or hot gas exhaust.

This gas cooktop can be connected with a class B or D flexible hose, which complies with AS/NZS 1869 and must be certified. The min. inner Ø must be 10 mm and the maximum length 1.2 m. Make sure it does not touch moving parts of the kitchen furniture, e.g. a drawer.

A full operational test and a test for possible leakages must be carried out by the fitter after installation.

Conversion to another type of gas

△ Connection to the gas supply, or conversion from one type of gas to another, should only be undertaken by an approved and registered gas installer in strict accordance with local and national safety and building regulations.

Jet table

When converting to a different type of gas, the main burner jet and the small burner jets have to be changed.

	Main burner jet Ø	Small burner jet Ø
NG		
Small burner	0.90	0.52
Medium burner	1.18	0.52
Large burner	-	-
Wok	1.75	1.10
ULPG		
Small burner	0.53	0.32
Medium burner	0.70	0.42
Large burner	-	-
Wok	1.00	0.65

The jet markings refer to 1/100 mm of the jet diameter.

38

Burner ratings

Nominal ratings for all gas types with the burner full on

Gas type	KM 2012 MJ/h
Small burner	
NG	4.1
ULPG	3.6
Medium burner	
NG	7.0
ULPG	6.5
Large burner	
NG	-
ULPG	-
Wok	
NG	14.5
ULPG	12.5
Total	
NG	32.6
ULPG	29.1

Nominal rating at low setting

Gas type	KM 2012 MJ/h
Small burner	
NG	1.14
ULPG	1.02
Medium burner	
NG	1.64
ULPG	1.93
Large burner	
NG	-
ULPG	-
Wok	
NG	5.00
ULPG	4.53

Nominal ratings for ULPG are based on propane gas.

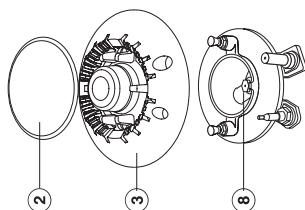
37

Conversion to another type of gas

Changing the jets

Disconnect the gas cooktop from the electricity supply by switching off at the socket or by disconnecting the mains fuse.

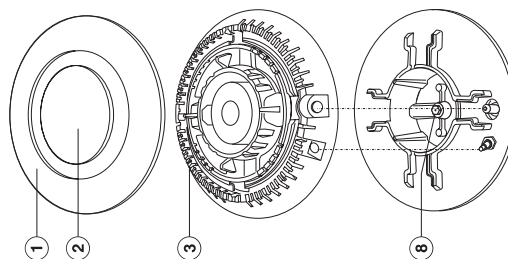
Small, medium and large burners



To change the main jet

- Take off the burner cap (2), burner ring (1) (for the wok) and burner head (3).
- Using an M7 socket spanner, unscrew the main jet (6).
- Fit the correct jets securely (see jet table).

Wok burner



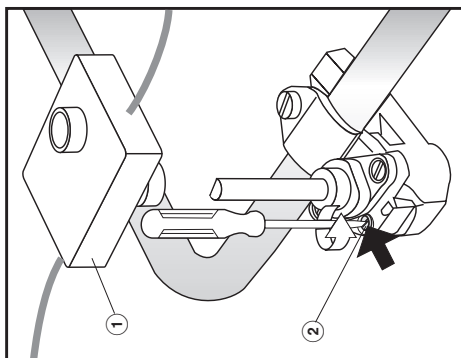
Conversion to another type of gas

To change the small jet

(for all burners)

The top of the appliance has to be removed before the small jets can be changed.

- Loosen the fixing screws on the burners.
- Pull the control knobs off.
- Lift the top of the appliance off.
- Remove the ignition switch (1).
- Using a small screwdriver, unscrew small jet (2) in the gas fitting.
- Pull out the jet with a pair of pliers.
- Fit the correct jets securely (see jet table).



Conversion to another type of gas

After changing the jets

- Reassemble the burner parts in the reverse order,
- Check all gas fittings for leaks by operating the burner without the top section of the cooktop in place (use a match to ignite the flame).
- Remove the loose burner parts again.
- Replace the top section of the cooktop.
- Screw the parts for the burner bases together securely, and assemble the burners (in the correct order!).
- Replace the control knobs.
- Ignite all the burners to check that they are operating correctly.

The flame must not go out on the lowest setting, or when the control is turned quickly from a high to a low setting.

On the highest setting, the flame must have a distinctive and visible core.

- Adhere the label supplied with the jets above the label stating the type of gas being used.

41

After sales service, data plate

The address and phone number of your nearest Miele office is given on the back page.

The voltage and rated load are given on the data plate. Please quote this data, together with the model description and serial number when contacting Miele.

Space in which to adhere the extra data plate supplied with the appliance. Ensure that the model number is the same as the one on the front of these operating instructions.



42



Miele Australia Pty. Ltd.

ABN 96 005 635 398

Melbourne:

1 Gilbert Park Drive

Knoxfield, VIC 3180

Telephone: (03) 9764 7130

Fax: (03) 9764 7149

Sydney:

3 Skyline Place

Frenchs Forest, NSW 2086

Telephone: (02) 8977 4230

Fax: (02) 8977 4249

Brisbane:

39 Harvey Street North

Eagle Farm, QLD 4009

Telephone: 1800 798 578

Fax: 1800 799 578

Adelaide:

83-85 Sir Donald Bradman Drive

Hilton, SA 5033

Telephone: 1800 018 770

Fax: 1800 799 578

Perth:

205-207 Stirling Highway

Claremont, WA 6010

Telephone: 1800 094 872

Fax: 1800 799 578

www.miele.com.au

Miele New Zealand Limited

Unit L, 10-20 Sylvia Park Road

Mt. Wellington, 1060, Auckland

New Zealand

Telephone: 0800 264 353

Fax: 0800 463 453

www.miele.co.nz

Germany

Miele & Cie. KG

Carl-Miele-Straße 29

33332 Gütersloh

Alteration rights reserved/ 2311

M.-Nr. 07 143 630 / 01



omega

installation
and operating
instructions



OR521 UXA
rangehood

ENGLISH

DESCRIPTION

The hood may be installed in the filtering or the ducting version. **Filtering version** (Fig. 1): The hood aspirates the kitchen air saturated with fumes and odours, purifies it through the grease filters and charcoal filters and returns clean air into the room. For constant efficiency, the charcoal filters must be replaced periodically. The charcoal filters are not supplied. **Ducting version** (Fig. 2): The hood aspirates the kitchen air saturated with fumes and odours, passes it through the grease filters and expels it to the outside through an outlet pipe. With this version the charcoal filters are not required.

Decide from the outset on the type of installation (filtering or ducting). For greater efficiency, we recommend you install the hood in the ducting version (if possible).

INSTALLATION

ATTENTION: The appliance should be installed by a qualified operator.

INSTALLATION IN DUCTING VERSION:

1. Before fixing the disposal duct for air evacuation to the outside, must be installed. Use an disposal duct with: - minimum indispensable length; - minimum possible bends (maximum angle of bend: 90°); - certified material (according to the State); - an as smooth as possible inside. It is also advisable to avoid any drastic changes in pipe cross-section. We recommend using a 123 mm diameter pipe for models shown in Figures 3 and 4, and a 150 mm diameter pipe for the model shown in Figure 5. For air evacuation to the outside, follow all the other instructions given on the "Warnings" sheet.

2. Prepare a suitable power supply. For the electrical connection, follow all the other instructions on the "Warnings" sheet.

3. Remove the metal grid or grease filters (make reference to Figures 6, 7 or 8 according to the model you have purchased).

- Fig. 6: remove the metal grid by moving the 2 side fasteners (A).

- Fig. 7 and 8: remove the filter by moving fastener (B) and turning the filter outwards. Afterwards, remove the metal grid by moving the 2 side fasteners (C).

4. Cut a hole in the bottom of the pensile cupboard in order to settle the appliance (Fig. 9).

5. To install the appliance, adjust the position of the clamping side spring by means of the proper screw (Fig. 10D), according to the thickness of the bored panel to which it is going to be anchored.

Insert the appliance in the pensile cupboard and lock it by means of the side spring. Use the holes which have already been made in the casing of the appliance to definitively fix it by means of 4 extra screws (provided) - Fig. 11.

6. Connect the disposal duct to the air evacuation pipe of the hood. Use a flexible pipe and lock it to the air evacuation pipe of the hood with a metal hose clamp (pipe and clamp are not provided). Make the electrical connections.

7. Refit the metal grid and/or the grease filters.

INSTALLATION IN FILTERING VERSION:

- Proceed with installation, making reference to the instructions for the extraction version (see points 2, 3, 4, 5), and then follow the instructions below.

- Connect the hose to the hood air outlet so the air is conveyed to the top of the wall unit; secure the hose with a metal clamp (hose and clamp are not provided). Make power connections.

Check whether the charcoal filters have already been fitted. If necessary, proceed to fit these as follows: rest the charcoal filter on the motor unit by making the pins coincide; turn the charcoal filter until this is fast (refer to Figures 12, 13 or 14 according to the model purchased).

Refit the metal grid and/or grease filters.

OPERATION

Depending on the model, the unit is equipped with the following controls:

Controls shown in Fig. 15: Key A = turns the lights on/off. Key B = turns the TIMER on/off: press once to turn the timer on, therefore, after 5 minutes, the motor cuts out (at the same time the selected speed blinks on the display); the timer remains on if the motor speed is changed. Display C = - indicates the selected motor speed (from 1 to 4); - indicates Timer On when the number blinks; - indicates Filter Alarm when the central segments is on or blinking. Key D = makes the motor work (at the last speed selected); pushing the button again, the speeds of the motor are sequentially selected from 1 to 4; keeping this button pressed for about 2 seconds shuts down the motor. Key E = resets the grease filters or charcoal filters; when the filter alarm appears (i.e. when the central segment on the display goes on), the grease filters must be cleaned (30 hours of operation); when the central segment starts blinking, the grease filters must be cleaned and the charcoal filters replaced (120 hours of operation). Obviously, if the hood is not a filtering model and does not have a charcoal filter, clean the grease

filters both when the central segment goes on and when it starts blinking. The filter alarm can be seen when the motor is off and for about 30 seconds. To reset the hour counter, keep the button pressed for 2 seconds while the alarm can be seen.

Controls shown in Fig. 16:

AUTOMATIC OPERATION WITH SENSOR:

Key A: switches the lights on/off. Key B: enables/disables "Automatic" function. When this function is selected, an "A" appears on the display C, and the speed of the motor increases or decreases depending on the smoke, odours and gas present in the kitchen. Display C: - indicates the automatic operation of the sensor (the letter "A" appears); - indicates the motor speed selected automatically by the sensor; indicates the filter alarm whenever the central segment is illuminated or flashing. Key D: decreases motor speed / Reset; decreases motor speed to zero (stopping); in any case however, after approximately 1 minute, the hood resumes automatic operation at the speed set by the sensor. Whenever the key is pressed during the display of filter alarms, a RESET occurs, and the counting of the hours resumes again. Key E: increases motor speed; in any case however, after approximately 1 minute, the hood resumes automatic operation at the speed set by the sensor.

Modification of sensor sensitivity: sensor sensitivity can be modified by operating as follows:
- stop the hood by pressing key B. - Simultaneously press keys D and E (the sensor's sensitivity index will appear on the display). - Pressing keys D or E, the sensor's sensitivity will either increase or decrease (1: minimum sensitivity / 9: maximum sensitivity). - whenever the power supply is interrupted, the sensor will resume operation with a sensitivity index of 5.

WARNING: In order to avoid damaging the sensor, never use silicone products near the hood!

OPERATION AS TRADITIONAL HOOD:

Key A: switches the lights on/off. Display C: - indicates the motor speed selected (from 1 to 4); - indicates the operation of the Timer when the number is flashing; - indicates filter alarms whenever the central segment is illuminated or flashing. Key D: decreases motor speed / Stop / Reset; decreases motor speed to zero (stopping). Whenever the key is pressing during filter alarm display, a RESET occurs, and the counting of the hours resumes again. Key E: enables the motor / increases motor speed / TIMER. Pressing this key starts the motor (at the latest speed set); pressing the key again increases motor speed, while keeping the key pressed down for a few seconds enables the TIMER, and 5 minutes later the motor will stop (while the number of speed setting selected will simultaneously begin flashing on the display); the Timer will remain enabled if motor speed is changed. In order to disable the Timer, press the key again.

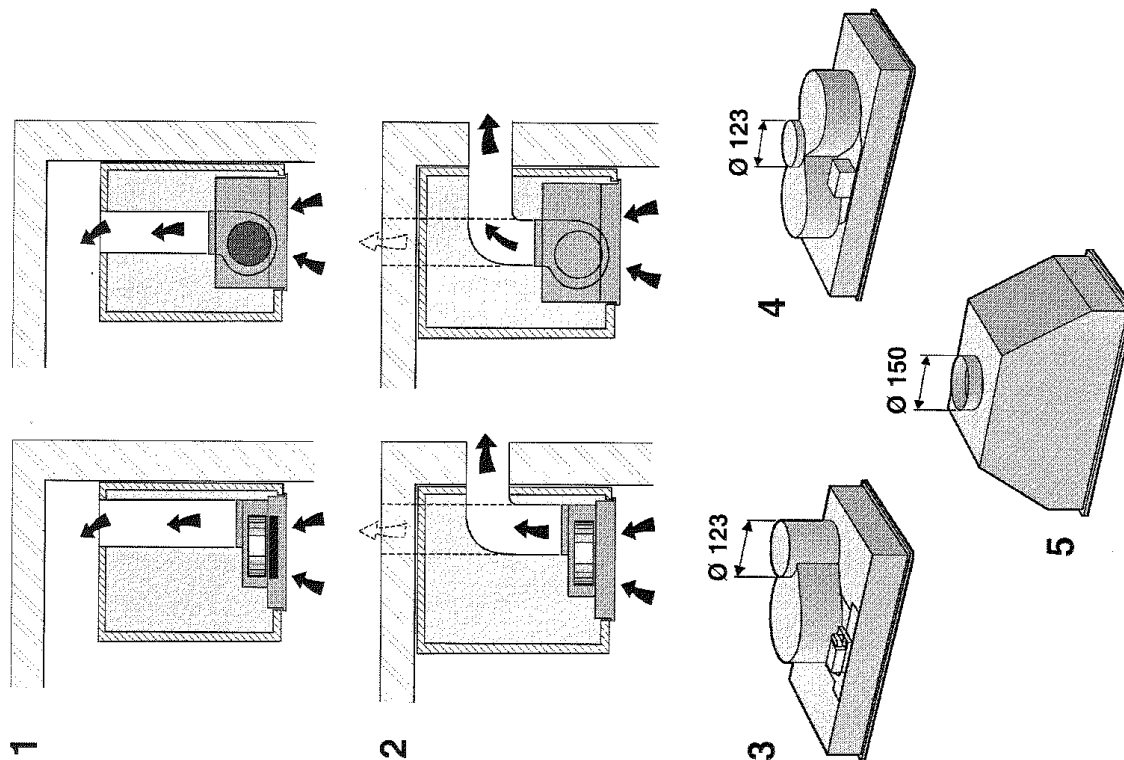
Controls shown in Fig. 17: Switch A: LIGHT; position 0: light off; position 1: light on. Switch B: MOTOR SPEED; makes it possible to select the motor operating speed; position 0: motor off. C: Motor on light.

Controls shown in Fig. 18: Key A: turns the lights on/off; every 30 hours of operation the corresponding pilot lamp (S) comes on to indicate that the grease filters must be cleaned; every 120 hours of operation the corresponding pilot lamp (S) flashes to indicate that the grease filters must be cleaned and the charcoal filter replaced. To restart the hour counter (RESET), hold the button A pressed down for about 1" (while the pilot lamp S is on). Key B: drives the motor in first speed (the corresponding pilot lamp comes on); when holding it down for about 1", the motor cuts out; when pressing the button a second time (while the pilot lamp is on), the TIMER is activated and thus the motor stops after 5' (the pilot lamp flashes). Key C: drives the motor in second speed (the corresponding pilot lamp comes on); when pressing the button a second time (while the pilot lamp is on), the TIMER is activated and thus the motor stops after 5' (the pilot lamp flashes). Key D: drives the motor in third speed (the corresponding pilot lamp comes on); when pressing the button a second time (while the pilot lamp is on), the TIMER is activated and thus the motor stops after 5' (the pilot lamp flashes). Key E: drives the motor in fourth speed (the corresponding pilot lamp comes on); when pressing the button a second time (while the pilot lamp is on), the TIMER is activated and thus the motor stops after 5' (the pilot lamp flashes).

Pay special attention to the **grease filters**: if the model purchased has the controls shown in Figure 15/16; the grease filters must be cleaned approximately once every 30 hours of operation (when the central segment on the display goes on or starts blinking). Once the cleaned filters are reinstalled, keep button R (Reset) pressed for two seconds to reset the counter. If the model purchased has the controls shown in Figure 17, the grease filter must be cleaned periodically, exactly how often depends on use (at least once every other month). Wash out the filter using a neutral soap. If the model purchased has the controls shown in Figure 18; the grease filters must be cleaned approximately once every 30 hours of operation (when the light pilot lamp comes on) - Fig. 18S. Wash out the filter using a neutral soap. Once the cleaned filters are reinstalled, to reset the counter hold the light button pressed down for about 1" (Fig. 18A) while the corresponding pilot lamp (S) is on. **IMPORTANT:** The metal grease filters must be periodically cleaned following the above instructions, while the synthetic grease filters (white colour) must be **laundered**, according to the same cleaning frequency as the metal filters.

Removing the grease filters:

- For the model shown in Fig. 6: remove the metal grid by moving the 2 side fasteners (A). Remove the filter retainers (Fig. 19F) and then the metal (or synthetic) grease filter (Fig. 19G).
- For the models shown in Fig. 7 and 8: remove the metal grease filter by moving fastener B and turning the filter outwards.

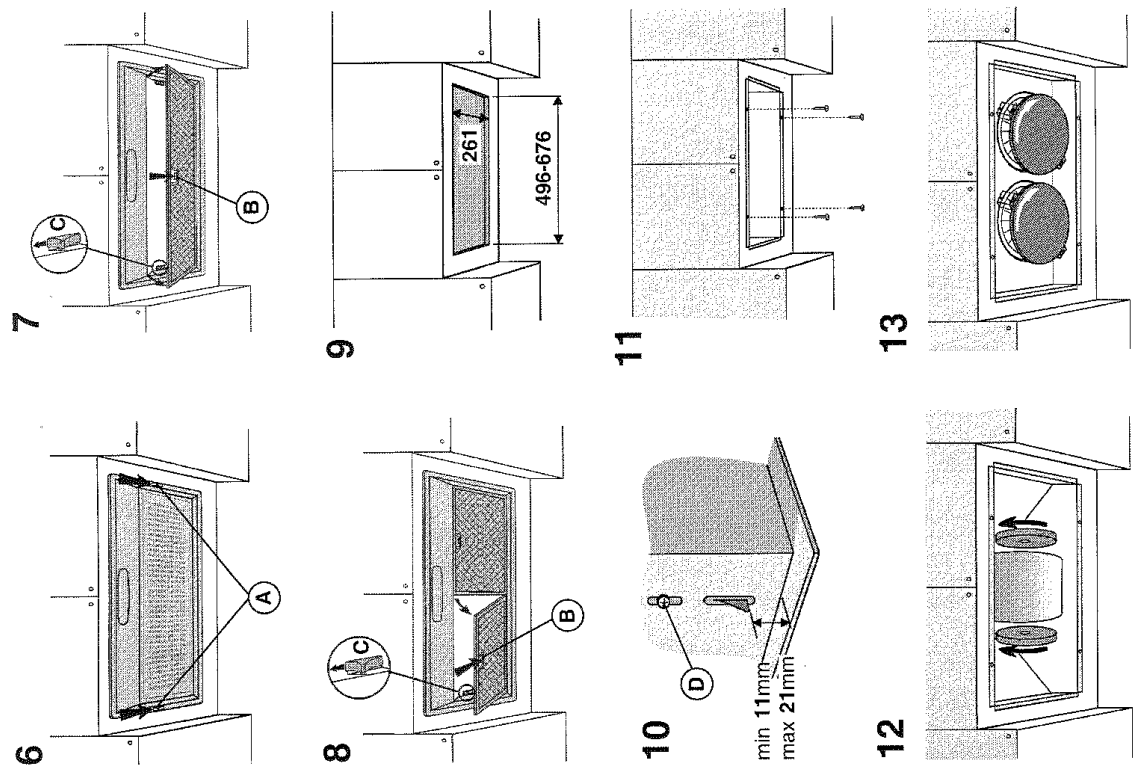
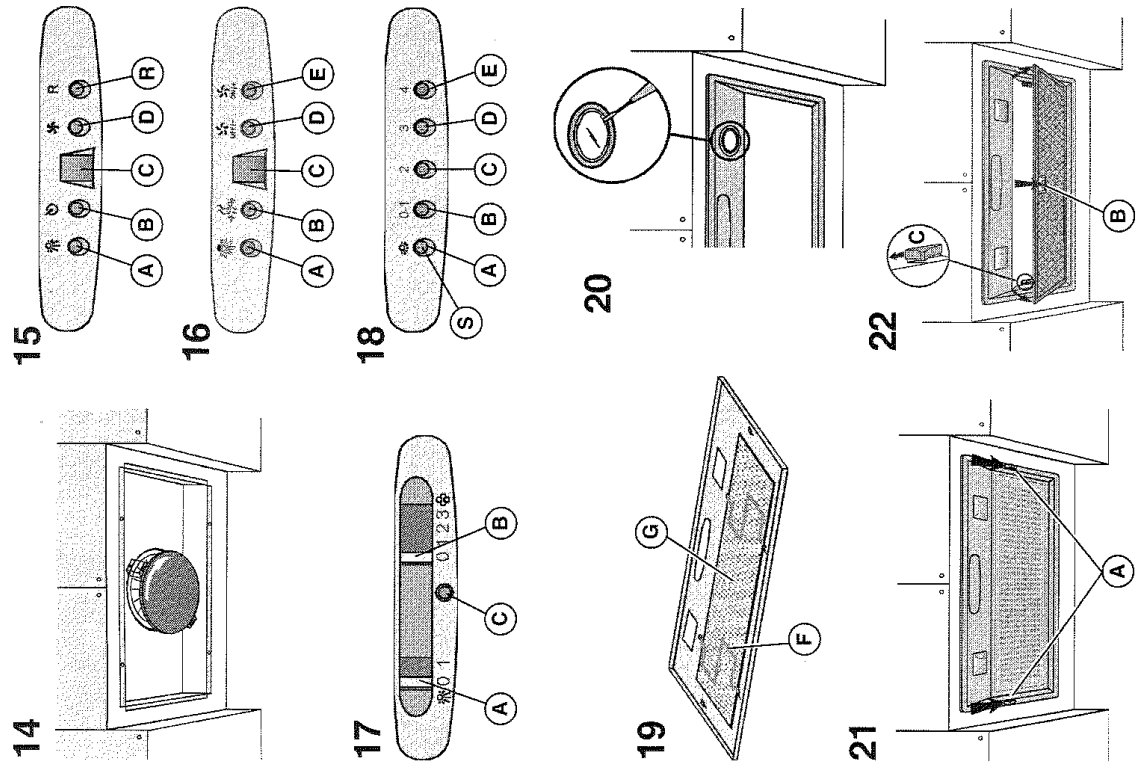


Replacing the charcoal filters: for filtering hoods, the charcoal filters must be replaced. If the model purchased has the controls shown in Figure 15/16, the charcoal filters must be replaced whenever the central segment of the display starts blinking (i.e. every 120 hours of operation). If the model purchased has the controls shown in Figure 17, the charcoal filters must be replaced according to use, on the average once every 6 months. If the model purchased has the controls shown in Figure 18, the charcoal filters must be replaced each time the light button (Fig 18S) lamp flashes (i.e. every 120 hours of operation).

Removing the charcoal filters: before removing the charcoal filters, the grid and/or grease filters will have to be removed following the instructions shown at point 3 of "Extraction version installation" paragraph. Then remove the charcoal filters by turning these until they disengage from the pins (turn the filters in the opposite direction indicated by the arrows as shown in Figures 12, 13, or 14).

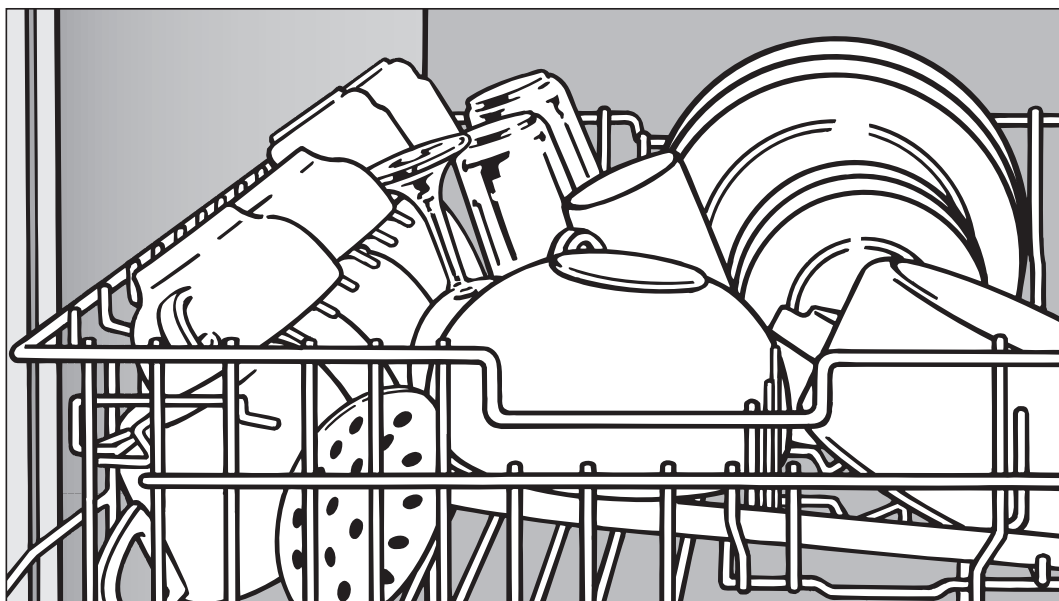
Lighting:

- For the model shown in Fig. 20: to change the halogen bulbs open the cover levering from the proper slots. Replace with bulbs of the same type. **CAUTION: Do not handle glass bulb with bare hands.**
- For the model shown in Fig. 21: to replace the incandescent bulbs, remove the metal grid by moving the 2 side fasteners A and unscrew the bulb. Replace with a bulb of the same type.
- For the model shown in Fig. 22: to replace the incandescent bulbs, remove the filter/s, moving the fastener and turning the filter outwards. Subsequently remove the metal grid by moving the 2 side fasteners (C). Unscrew the bulb and replace with another of the same type.



Miele

Operating instructions





for dishwashers

To avoid the risk of accidents or damage to the appliance, it is **essential** to read these instructions as well as the installation plan before it is installed and used for the first time.

en - GB

M.-Nr. 07 502 050

Contents

Guide to the appliance	5
Appliance overview	5
Control panel	6
Warning and Safety instructions	7
Caring for the environment	12
Disposal of the packing material	12
Disposal of your old appliance	12
Energy saving washing	13
Before using for the first time	14
To open the door	14
To close the door	14
Safety lock	14
Water softener	15
To programme the water hardness level	16
Checking the programmed water hardness level	17
Before using the appliance for the first time you require:	18
Filling the salt reservoir	18
Salt refill indicator 	19
Rinse aid	20
Adding rinse aid	20
Rinse aid indicator 	21
Setting the rinse aid dosage	22
Loading the dishwasher	23
Items not suitable for dishwashers:	24
Upper basket	25
Hinged cup rack	25
Positioning rail (depending on model)	25
Adjusting the upper basket	26
Lower basket	27
Hinged spikes	27
Removable spiked insert	28
Bottle holder (depending on model)	28
Cutlery	29
Cutlery tray (depending on model)	29
Cutlery basket (depending on model)	30

Contents

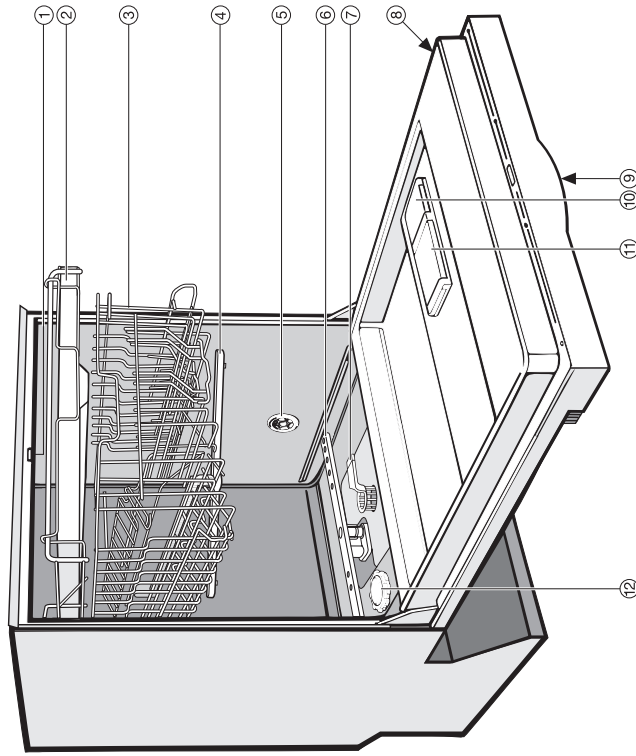
Operation	31
Detergent	31
Adding detergent	32
Switching on	33
Selecting a programme	33
Starting a programme	33
Programme sequence indicators	33
At the end of a programme	34
Switching off	34
Unloading the dishwasher	34
Interrupting a programme	35
Changing a programme	35
Additional functions	36
Factory default setting	36
Cleaning and care	37
Cleaning the wash cabinet	37
Cleaning the door and the door seal	37
Cleaning the door front	37
Cleaning the filters in the wash cabinet	38
Cleaning the spray arms	40
Problem solving guide	41
Technical problems	41
The dishwasher does not fill/drain	43
General problems	44
Noises	45
Unsatisfactory washing result	46
Maintenance	49
Cleaning the water inlet filter	49
Cleaning the drain pump and non-return valve	50
After sales service	51
Repairs	51
Future updates	51
For testing institutes	51
Programme chart	52
Optional accessories	56

Contents

Electrical connection	57
Plumbing	58
The Miele waterproof anti-leak system	58
Connection to the water supply	58
Drainage	59
Technical data	60

Guide to the appliance

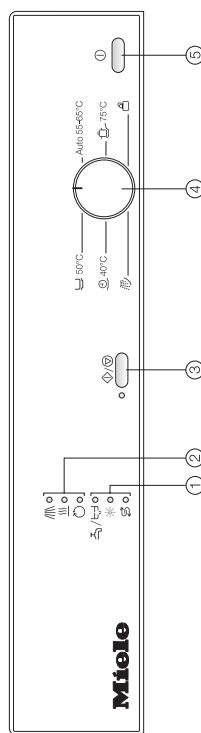
Appliance overview



- | | |
|---|--|
| ① Upper spray arm (not visible) | ⑦ Filter combination |
| ② Cutlery tray (depending on model) | ⑧ Data plate |
| ③ Upper basket | ⑨ Child safety lock in door grip (not visible) |
| ④ Middle spray arm | ⑩ Rinse aid reservoir |
| ⑤ Air inlet for drying (depending on model) | ⑪ Dual compartment detergent dispenser |
| ⑥ Lower spray arm | ⑫ Salt reservoir |

Guide to the appliance

Control panel



① Check/Refill indicators

② Programme sequence indicators

③ / Start/Stop button with indicator light

④ Programme selector

⑤ On/Off button

Symbols

◇ / Start/Stop button
① On/Off button

Programme sequence indicators

Wash / Rinse
Drying
End

Check/Refill indicators

Inlet / Drain
Rinse aid
Salt

Programmes

Auto 55-65 °C Sensor wash 55-65 °C
75 °C Pots & pans 75 °C
Energy save
Pre-wash
40 °C Quick wash 40 °C
50 °C Light soiling 50 °C

This instruction book applies to several different dishwasher models. The specific dishwasher models below are referred to as follows:

G 1021, G 1022 etc. = G 1XXX
G 2021, G 2022 etc. = G 2XXX

The model numbers G 1XXX and G 2XXX used in this book refer to the model designation specified on the data plate of the appliance (and not the description on the control panel).

The data plate is located at the top right hand side of the door.

Warning and Safety instructions

Safety with children

▲ This appliance is not a toy! To avoid the risk of injury, keep children well away and do not allow them to play in or around the dishwasher, or to use the controls. They will not understand the potential dangers posed by it. They should be supervised whenever you are working in the kitchen. There is a danger that children playing might shut themselves in the dishwasher.

▲ Older children may only use the dishwasher when its operation has been clearly explained to them and they are able to use it safely, recognising the dangers of misuse.

▲ Keep children away from detergents. Dishwasher detergents contain irritant and corrosive ingredients which can cause burning in the mouth, nose and throat if swallowed, or inhibit breathing. Keep children away from the dishwasher when the door is open. There could still be detergent residues in the cabinet. Consult a doctor immediately if your child has swallowed or inhaled detergent.

This appliance conforms to current safety requirements. Inappropriate use can, however, lead to personal injury and damage to property. To avoid the risk of accidents and damage to the appliance, please read these instructions carefully before using it for the first time. They contain important information on its safety, use and maintenance. Keep these instructions in a safe place and pass them on to any future owner.

Correct application

▲ This dishwasher is intended exclusively for cleaning domestic crockery and cutlery in a domestic household. Using it for purposes other than those for which it was designed, as well as any alterations or conversions to the appliance, would be unauthorised and could be dangerous. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage resulting from improper or incorrect use of the appliance.

▲ This dishwasher is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they are supervised whilst using it or they have been shown how to use it correctly by a person responsible for their safety.

Warning and Safety instructions

Technical safety

- ▲ Before setting up the appliance, check it for any externally visible damage. Under no circumstances should you use a damaged appliance. A damaged appliance could be dangerous.
- ▲ The dishwasher must only be plugged into the electricity supply via a suitable switched socket. The electrical socket must be easily accessible after the dishwasher has been installed so that it can be disconnected from the electricity supply at any time. (See "Electrical connection").
- ▲ There must be no electrical sockets behind the dishwasher. Danger of overheating and fire risk if the dishwasher were to be pushed up against a plug.
- ▲ The dishwasher must not be installed under a hob. The high radiant temperatures which are sometimes generated by a hob could damage the dishwasher. For the same reason it should not be installed next to open fires or other appliances which give off heat, such as heaters etc.
- ▲ Do not connect the dishwasher to the mains supply until it has been fully installed.
- ▲ Before connecting the appliance, check that the connection data on the data plate (voltage and connected load) match the mains electricity supply. If in any doubt, consult a qualified electrician.
- ▲ The electrical safety of this appliance can only be guaranteed when continuity is complete between it and an effective earthing system. It is most important that this basic safety requirement is present and regularly tested and where there is any doubt the electrical system in the house should be checked by a qualified electrician. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for the consequences of an inadequate earthing system (e.g. electric shock).
- ▲ Do not connect the appliance to the mains electricity supply by a multi-socket unit or an extension lead. These do not guarantee the required safety of the appliance (e.g. danger of overheating).

8

Warning and Safety instructions

- ▲ This appliance may only be installed in mobile installations such as ships if a risk assessment of the installation has been carried out by a suitably qualified engineer.
 - ▲ The plastic housing of the water connection contains an electrical component. The housing must not be dipped in water.
 - ▲ There are live wires in the water inlet hose. Never cut the water inlet hose, even if it is too long.
 - ▲ The integrated Waterproof System offers protection from water damage, provided the following conditions are met:
 - The dishwasher is correctly installed and plumbed in.
 - The dishwasher is properly maintained and parts are replaced where necessary.
 - The stopcock has been turned off when the appliance is not used for a longer period of time (e.g. during holidays).
- The Waterproof system will work even if the appliance is switched off. However, the appliance must remain connected to the electricity supply.
- ▲ A damaged appliance could be dangerous. If the dishwasher gets damaged, switch it off at the mains and call your Miele Dealer or the Miele Service Department.
 - ▲ Unauthorised repairs could result in unforeseen dangers for the user, for which Miele cannot accept liability. Repairs should only be undertaken by a Miele approved service technician.
 - ▲ Faulty components must only be replaced by genuine Miele original spare parts. The manufacturer can only guarantee the safety of the appliance when Miele replacement parts are used.
 - ▲ Always disconnect the dishwasher from the electrical supply for maintenance work (switch off at the wall socket and remove the plug).
 - ▲ If the connection cable is damaged it must be replaced with a Miele cable by a Miele approved service technician only.
 - ▲ In countries where there are areas which may be subject to infestation by cockroaches or other vermin, pay particular attention to keeping the appliance and its surroundings in a clean condition at all times. Any damage which may be caused by cockroaches or other vermin will not be covered by the guarantee.

9

Warning and Safety instructions

Installation

- ▶ The dishwasher must be installed and connected in compliance with the installation diagram supplied.
- ▶ The dishwasher must be correctly aligned to ensure problem-free operation.
- ▶ In order to ensure stability, built-under and integrated dishwashers must only be installed under a continuous worktop which is secured to adjacent cabinetry.
- ▶ If you want to convert your freestanding dishwasher to a built-under ("U") model, you will need to order the appropriate conversion kit. If you remove the existing plinth, you must replace it with a U-model plinth. This is necessary to avoid the risk of injury caused by protruding metal parts.

Correct use

- ▶ Do not use solvents in the dishwasher. Danger of explosion.
- ▶ Do not inhale or ingest dishwasher detergent. Dishwasher detergents contain irritant or corrosive ingredients which can cause burning in the nose, mouth and throat if swallowed, or inhibit breathing. Consult a doctor immediately if detergent has been swallowed or inhaled.
- ▶ Avoid leaving the door open unnecessarily, as you could trip over it.
- ▶ Do not sit or lean on the opened door. This could cause the dishwasher to tip and be damaged, and you could get injured.
- ▶ Only use detergent and rinse aid formulated for domestic dishwashers. Do not use washing-up liquid.
- ▶ Do not use commercial or industrial detergents as these may cause damage and there is a risk of severe chemical reaction.
- ▶ Do not fill the rinse aid reservoir with powder or liquid detergent. This will cause serious damage to the reservoir.

Warning and Safety instructions

Accessories

- ▶ Only use genuine Miele spare parts and accessories with this appliance. If spare parts or accessories from other manufacturers are used, this will invalidate the guarantee, and Miele cannot accept liability.

Disposal of your old dishwasher

- ▶ Make the door lock inoperative so that children cannot accidentally shut themselves in. Make appropriate arrangements for the disposal of the appliance.

The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage caused by non-compliance with these Warning and Safety instructions.

- ▶ Inadvertently filling the salt reservoir with powder or liquid dishwasher detergent will damage the water softener. Make sure you have picked up the correct packet of dishwasher salt before filling the salt reservoir!
- ▶ Please only use special coarse grained dishwasher salt for reactivation, as other salts may contain insoluble additives which can impair the functioning of the softener.
- ▶ In an appliance with a cutlery basket (depending on model) cutlery is cleaned and dried more efficiently if placed in the basket with the handles downwards. However, to avoid the risk of injury, place knives and forks etc. with the handles upwards.
- ▶ Plastic items which cannot withstand being washed in hot water, such as disposable plastic containers, or plastic cutlery and crockery should not be cleaned in the dishwasher. The high temperatures in the dishwasher may cause them to melt or lose shape.
- ▶ On models with "Delay start", make sure that the dispenser is dry before adding detergent. Wipe dry if necessary. Detergent will clog if poured into a damp dispenser and may not be thoroughly dispersed.

Caring for the environment

Disposal of the packing material

The transport and protective packing has been selected from materials which are environmentally friendly for disposal and should be recycled.

Ensure that any plastic wrappings, bags, etc. are disposed of safely and kept out of the reach of babies and young children. Danger of suffocation.

The packaging consists of the following materials:

Outer packaging:

- Corrugated cardboard made from up to 100% recyclable material, or: Polyethylene (PE) shrink wrap
- Polypropylene (PP) strapping

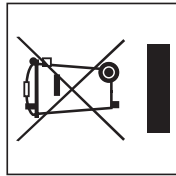
Inner packaging:

- Chlorine and fluorine free expanded polystyrene (EPS)
- Base, lid frame and support battens made from untreated natural wood from renewable forests.
- Polyethylene (PE) protective wrap

Rather than just throwing these materials away, please ensure they are recycled.

Disposal of your old appliance

Electrical and electronic appliances often contain materials which, if handled or disposed of incorrectly, could be potentially hazardous to human health and to the environment. They are, however, essential for the correct functioning of your appliance. Please do not therefore dispose of it with your household waste.



Please dispose of it at your local community waste collection/recycling centre or contact your Dealer for advice. Ensure that it presents no danger to children while being stored for disposal.

To enable sorting by type of plastic for recycling, all plastic parts of the appliance are labelled with international standard symbols.

Caring for the environment

Energy saving washing

This dishwasher is exceptionally economical in its use of water and electricity. You can make the most of your appliance by following these tips:

- If your water supply is suitable, this dishwasher can be connected to hot water for further economies. If the water is heated by solar panels, for example, this would be energy efficient.
- However, if your water is heated by electricity we would recommend connection to cold water.
- For most economical dishwashing, make full use of the baskets without overloading the dishwasher.
- Choose the programme to suit the type of crockery being washed and the degree of soiling.
- Select the Energy save programme for energy-saving dishwashing.
- Follow the detergent manufacturer's recommendations on detergent dosage.
- When using powder or liquid detergent, you can use $\frac{1}{3}$ less detergent if baskets are only half full.

Before using for the first time

To open the door



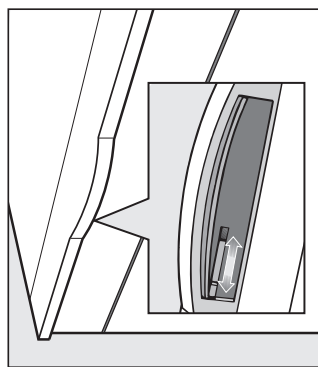
- Press the release catch inside the door grip upwards and pull the door open.

If the door is opened during operation all functions are automatically interrupted.

To close the door

- Push the baskets right in.
- Then lift the door upwards and push until it clicks into position.

Safety lock



Use the safety lock to prevent children opening the dishwasher door.

- To lock the door, push the slide underneath the door grip to the right.
- To unlock the door, push the slide to the left.

Before using for the first time

Water softener

In order to achieve good cleaning results, the dishwasher needs to operate with soft water. Hard water results in the build-up of calcium deposits on crockery and in the dishwasher.

Mains water with a hardness level higher than 0.7 mmol/l (4°d – German scale) needs to be softened. This takes place automatically in the integrated water softener.

- The water softener requires dishwasher salt.
- The dishwasher must be programmed for the water hardness in your area.
- Your local water authority will be able to advise you of the water hardness level in your area.

Where the water hardness fluctuates e.g. between 6.7 - 9.0 mmol/l (37 - 50 °d German scale) always programme the dishwasher to the higher value (9.0 mmol/l in this example).

In the event of a fault, it will help the service technician if you know the hardness of your local water supply.

- Enter the water hardness below:

_____ mmol/l or °d

The dishwasher is set at the factory for a hardness level of 2.2 - 2.7 mmol/l (12 - 15 °d).


If this setting corresponds to the hardness of your water you do not need to do anything more.










If your water is harder or softer, you will need to programme the water hardness level. See following section.


Before using for the first time


To programme the water hardness level


Each time a button is pressed, one of the indicator lights will flash and light up in the control panel. However, only the indicator lights mentioned in the following programming process stages are significant.

The programming procedure can be cancelled at any time by pressing the  button. The procedure can then be re-started from the beginning again.


- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.
 - Turn the programme selector to the "12 o'clock" position.
 - Press the Start/Stop button  /  in, and **whilst holding it in** switch the dishwasher on using the  button. Keep the  /  button pressed in until the  /  indicator light comes on.
- If this does not happen, start the procedure from the beginning again.
- Turn the programme selector to the "3 o'clock" position.
- The  programme sequence indicator will flash briefly four times at intervals (factory default setting).

The number of times the  programme sequence indicator flashes tells you the water hardness level which has been set (see chart).

°d	mmol/l	°f	 Flash frequency
1 - 4	0.2 - 0.7	2- 7	Once briefly
5 - 7	0.9 - 1.3	9- 13	Twice briefly
8 - 11	1.4 - 2.0	14- 20	3 times briefly
12 - 15	2.2 - 2.7	22- 27	4 times briefly
16 - 20	2.9 - 3.6	29- 36	5 times briefly
21 - 25	3.8 - 4.5	38- 45	6 times briefly
26 - 30	4.7 - 5.4	47- 54	7 times briefly
31 - 36	5.6 - 6.5	56- 65	8 times briefly
37 - 45	6.7 - 8.1	67- 81	9 times briefly
46 - 70	8.3 - 12.6	83- 126	Once for longer

- Use the  /  button to select the number of flashes which equates to your water hardness level. Each press of the button moves you up a level. When the highest water hardness level is reached, the setting starts from the beginning again.






Example:

If your water hardness level is 4.0 mmol/l (22 °d), the  programme sequence indicator should flash briefly six times at intervals.

- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.

Before using for the first time

Checking the programmed water hardness level

- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.
 - Turn the programme selector to the "12 o'clock" position.
 - Press the Start/Stop button  /  in, and **whilst holding it in** switch the dishwasher on using the  button. Keep the  /  button pressed in until the  /  indicator light comes on.
 - Turn the programme selector to the "3 o'clock" position.
- The  programme sequence indicator will flash the number of times which corresponds to the water hardness level which has been set (see chart).
- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.

Before using for the first time

Miele branded products are available from the Miele Spare Parts Department or via the internet at www.miele-shop.com.

Before using the appliance for the first time you require:

- Approx. 2 litres of water,
- Approx. 2 kg dishwasher salt,
- Domestic dishwasher detergent,
- Rinse aid formulated for domestic dishwashers.

Every dishwasher is tested at the factory. There will be residual water in the appliance from this test. It is not an indication that it has been used previously.

Filling the salt reservoir

If you use combination products which have salt in them in your dishwasher, such as "3 in 1" or "4 in 1" products, you should still add salt in order to achieve optimum results and to ensure that the water softener continues to function.

If the water in your area is very soft and constantly **lower than 0.7 mmol/l (4 °d -German scale)** you do not need to add dishwasher salt. The water softener must, however, still be programmed to correspond to the water hardness level in your area.

Important! Before filling the salt reservoir with dishwasher salt for the **first time**, you must fill it with approx. 2 litres of water to enable the salt to dissolve. Once the dishwasher has been used, there is always sufficient water in the reservoir.

⚠ Inadvertently filling the salt reservoir with powder or liquid dishwasher detergent will damage the water softener. Make sure you have picked up the correct packet of dishwasher salt before filling the salt reservoir!

⚠ Only use special coarse grained dishwasher salt for reactivation. Do not use other salts such as cooking salt, agricultural grade or gritting salt. These may contain insoluble additives which can impair the functioning of the water softener.

Before using for the first time

Salt refill indicator

- Fill the salt reservoir with dishwasher salt when the salt refill indicator comes on. (If it comes on during a programme, wait until the end of the programme).

After the reservoir has been filled, the

water softener is automatically

reactivated the next time the

dishwasher is run. The salt refill

indicator may still be illuminated during

this process. It will go out once the salt

concentration has reached the correct level.

The salt refill indicator will not come on if the dishwasher has been

programmed for a water hardness level

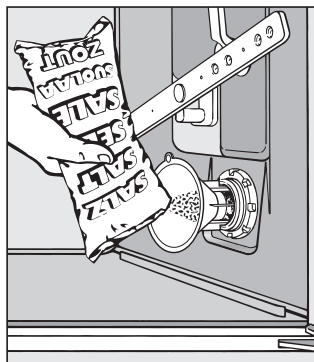
of less than 0.7 mmol/l (4°d, German scale).

⚠ After filling the salt reservoir, run the 40 °C immediately (without any crockery in the dishwasher) to remove any traces of salt from the cabinet.

- Remove the lower basket and unscrew the salt reservoir cap.

Only open the salt reservoir when you want to fill it with dishwasher salt as water or salt solution will run out of the reservoir when the cap is removed.

- Fill the reservoir with approx. 2 litres of water (first use only).



- Place the funnel provided over the salt reservoir and carefully fill with salt until the reservoir is full. The salt reservoir holds approx. 2 kg of salt depending on the brand used.

- Clean any excess salt from around the reservoir opening and then screw the cap on again **firmly**.

- Run the 40 °C programme immediately (without any crockery in the dishwasher) to remove any traces of salt from the cabinet.

Before using for the first time

Rinse aid

Rinse aid is necessary to ensure water does not cling and leave marks on crockery during the drying phase and helps crockery dry faster after it has been washed.

Rinse aid is poured into the storage reservoir and the amount set is dispensed automatically.

⚠ Inadvertently filling the rinse aid reservoir with powder or liquid detergent will damage the reservoir. Only pour rinse aid formulated for domestic dishwashers into the reservoir.

Alternatively, it is possible to use

- Household vinegar with a max. 5% acid content

or

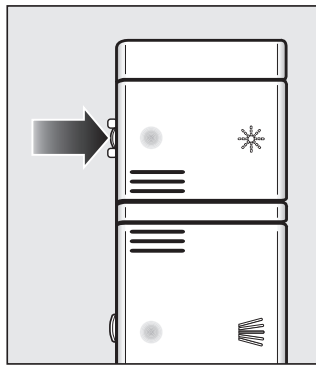
- Liquid citric acid up to 10% acid content.

The resulting rinsing and drying quality will not, however, be as good as when rinse aid is used.

⚠ Do not use vinegar with a higher acid content (e.g. vinegar essence 25% acid). This would damage the dishwasher.

If you only ever use combination products containing rinse aid in your dishwasher, you do not need to add rinse aid.

Adding rinse aid



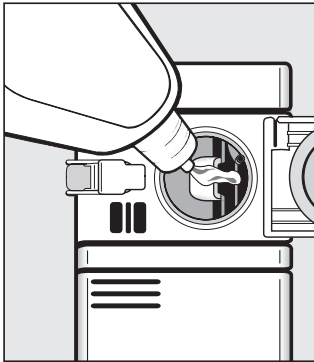
- Press the button on the lid of the rinse aid reservoir in the direction of the arrow until the flap springs open.

Before using for the first time

Rinse aid indicator *

When the rinse aid indicator * comes on, the reservoir contains sufficient rinse aid for 2 - 3 programmes only.

- Add rinse aid in plenty of time.



- Add rinse aid only until it is visible in the opening.

The rinse aid reservoir holds approx. 110 ml.

- Close the flap firmly so that it clicks into place. Otherwise water can enter the rinse aid reservoir during a programme.
- Wipe up any spilled rinse aid. This prevents over-foaming occurring during the next programme.

Before using for the first time

Setting the rinse aid dosage


You can adjust the rinse aid dosage for best results.








The rinse aid dosage can be set from approx. 0-6 ml. It is set to a recommended setting of approx. 3 ml at the factory.

If spots appear on crockery and glassware:

- Increase the rinse aid dosage.


If clouding or smearing appears on crockery and glassware:


- Decrease the rinse aid dosage.
- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.
- Turn the programme selector to the "12 o'clock" position.


- Press the Start/Stop button  /  in, and **whilst holding it in** switch the dishwasher on using the  button. Keep the  /  button pressed in until the  /  indicator light comes on.



If this does not happen, start the procedure from the beginning again.

- Turn the programme selector to the "5 o'clock" position.

The  programme sequence indicator will flash briefly three times at intervals. This means that approx. 3 ml of rinse aid will be used per programme (factory default setting).

The number of times the  programme sequence indicator flashes tells you the rinse aid dosage which has been set (see chart).

Rinse aid in ml	 Flash frequency
0	-
1	Once
2	Twice
3	Three times
4	Four times
5	Five times
6	Six times


- Use the  /  button to select the number of flashes which equates to the rinse aid dosage you want. Each press of the button moves you up a level.

The programmed rinse aid dosage is now stored in memory.

- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.

Loading the dishwasher

- Wide based items should be placed at an angle so that water can run off them freely.
- The spray arms must not be blocked by items which are too tall or hang through the baskets. If in doubt, test for free movement by manually rotating the spray arms.
- Make sure that small items cannot fall through the holders in the baskets. Small items, e.g. lids, should therefore be placed in the cutlery tray or cutlery basket (depending on model).

 Do not wash items soiled with ash, sand, wax, lubricating grease or paint in the dishwasher. These substances will damage the dishwasher.

Crockery can be loaded anywhere in the baskets, but the following notes should be observed:

- Do not place crockery and cutlery inside other pieces where they may be concealed.
- Load the crockery so that water can access all surfaces. This ensures that they get properly cleaned.
- Make sure that all items are securely positioned.
- Hollow items such as cups, glasses, pans, etc. must be inverted in the basket.
- Tall, narrow, hollow items, e.g. champagne glasses, should be placed in the centre of the basket to ensure better water coverage.

Some foodstuffs may contain natural dyes, e.g. carrots, tomatoes or ketchup. Plastic items in the dishwasher may discolour if large quantities of these foodstuffs find their way into the appliance on the crockery. The stability of plastic items is not affected by this discolouration.

Loading the dishwasher

Items not suitable for dishwashers:

- Wooden cutlery and crockery or items with wooden parts: these may discolour and fade. The glue used in these items is not dishwasher-proof and wooden handles may come loose after being washed in a dishwasher.
- Craft items, antiques, valuable vases and decorative glassware are also not suitable for dishwashers.
- Plastic items which are not heat resistant: the high temperatures in the dishwasher may cause them to melt or lose shape.
- Copper, brass, tin and aluminium items may discolour or become matt.
- Colours painted over a glaze may fade after a number of washes.
- Clouding may occur on glasses after frequent washing. Do not wash delicate glassware, or glassware containing lead crystal in a dishwasher.

We recommend:

- When purchasing new crockery and cutlery, make sure they are dishwasher-proof.
- If delicate glassware is washed in the dishwasher ensure that only very low temperatures are used (see programme chart), or a special glass-care programme is used (depending on model). This will reduce the risk of clouding.
- If in doubt, wash delicate glassware by hand.

Please note

Silverware previously cleaned with a **silver polish** may still be damp or spotted at the end of a programme, where water has not run off smoothly. It may need to be rubbed dry with a soft cloth.

Silver which has been in contact with foods containing sulphur can discolour. These include egg yolk, onions, mayonnaise, mustard, pulses, fish, fish brine and marinades.

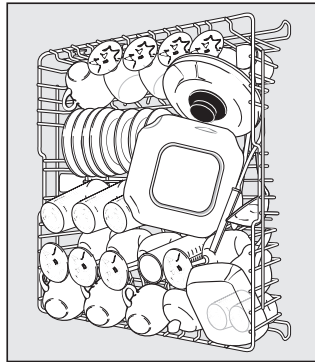
⚠ Aluminium components (e.g. grease filters) must not be cleaned with caustic alkaline commercial or industrial cleaning agents. These may damage the material, or in extreme cases, cause a severe chemical reaction. See section "Adding detergent" for information on suitable detergents.

24

Loading the dishwasher

Upper basket

⚠ For safety reasons, do not operate the dishwasher without the upper and lower baskets in place.



- Use the upper basket for small, lightweight and delicate items such as cups, saucers, glasses, dessert bowls, etc. Shallow pans or casserole dishes can also be placed in the upper basket.

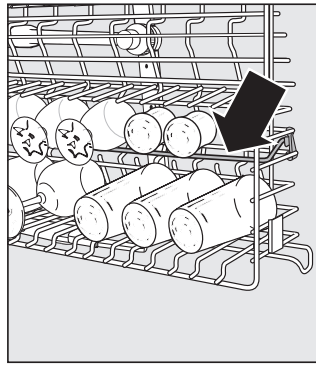
- Long items such as soup ladles, mixing spoons and long knives should be placed lying down across the front of the upper basket.

Hinged cup rack

- To make room for tall items, raise the rack upwards.

Positioning rail (depending on model)

Glasses can be arranged along the positioning rail to give them some support during the programme.



- Raise the rail, and lean the glasses against it.

The positioning rail can be flipped over to the middle of the basket for easy sorting and removing of crockery.

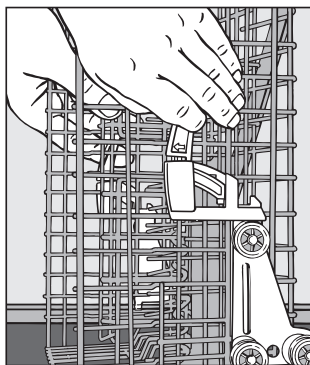
25

Loading the dishwasher

Adjusting the upper basket

In order to gain more space for taller pieces of crockery in the bottom or upper basket, the upper basket can be adjusted on three levels with 2 cm between each level.

The upper basket can also be set at an angle with one side high and the other side low. This can be useful to help prevent water collecting in deep dishes etc. Ensure, however, that the basket can be inserted smoothly into the cabinet. It is better to adjust the basket before loading it.



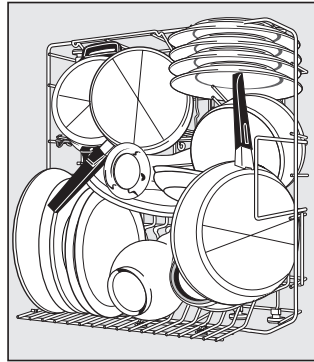
- Pull out the upper basket.
- To raise the upper basket:
 - Pull the basket up until it clicks into place.
- To lower the upper basket:
 - Pull upwards on the levers at either side of the upper basket.
- Adjust the basket to the desired height and then push the levers securely back down into position.

26

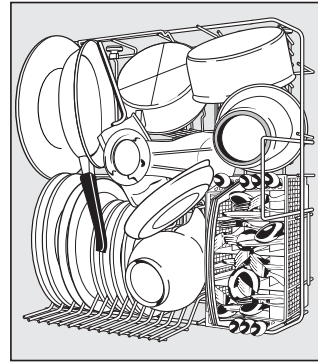
Loading the dishwasher

Lower basket

- For larger and heavier items such as plates, serving platters, saucepans, bowls, etc.
Small items such as saucers can also be placed in the lower basket. Do not place delicate glassware in the lower basket.



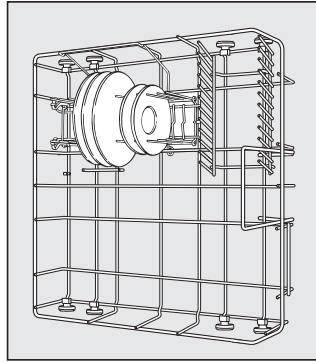
Dishwashers with cutlery tray



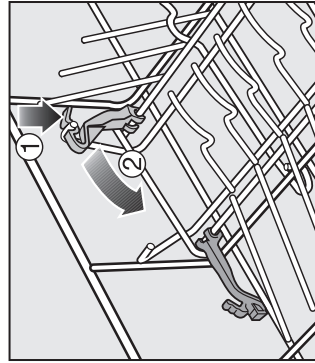
Dishwashers with cutlery basket

Hinged spikes

The spikes are used for washing plates and saucers.



Both rows of spikes at the back can be lowered to make more room for large items, e.g. pots, pans and dishes.



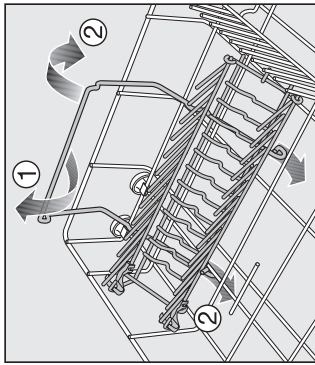
- Press the yellow lever downwards ①, and then lower the spikes ②.

27

Loading the dishwasher

Removable spiked insert

You can remove the spiked insert to make more room for larger items of crockery, e.g. a large, flat pot, or another type of insert.



To remove the insert ①

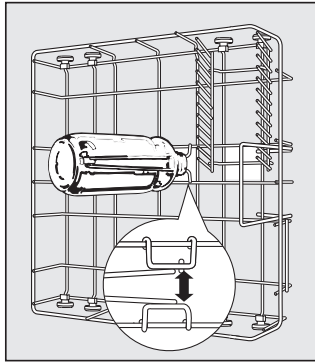
- Pull it upwards by the handle as shown.

To replace the insert ②

- Fit the insert into the lower basket with the hooks going under the long cross-piece as illustrated.
- Press down on the handle until the insert is held securely in position.

Bottle holder (depending on model)

The bottle holder can be used to wash narrow items, e.g. milk and baby bottles.

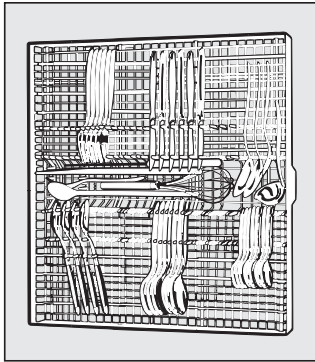


- Place the bottle holder in the position shown in the bottom basket. If placed anywhere else, water will not be able to access the bottle properly, and cleaning results will be impaired.

Loading the dishwasher

Cutlery

Cutlery tray (depending on model)

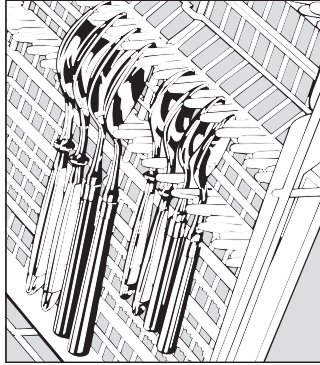


- Arrange the cutlery in the tray as shown.

To make unloading much easier, cutlery should be grouped in zones, one for knives, one for forks, one for spoons, etc.

Spoon heads should be placed in contact with at least one of the serrated retainers on the base of the cutlery tray to ensure that water runs off them freely.

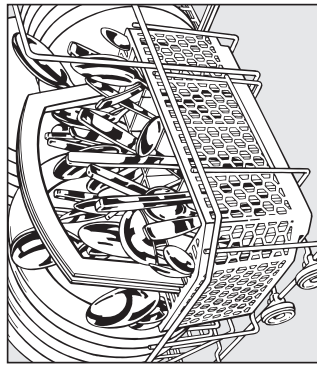
The upper spray arm must not be blocked by items which are too big (e.g. cake slices).



If spoon handles do not fit between the holders, then lay them the other way round.

Loading the dishwasher

Cutlery basket (depending on model)

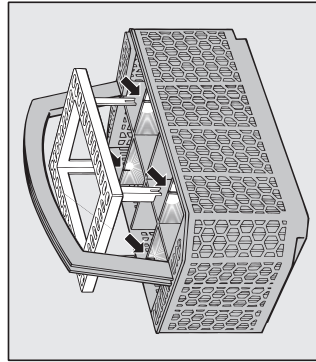


■ To avoid the risk of injury, knives and forks should be placed with the handles upwards in the basket. However, cutlery placed handle down in the basket will come out cleaner and drier.

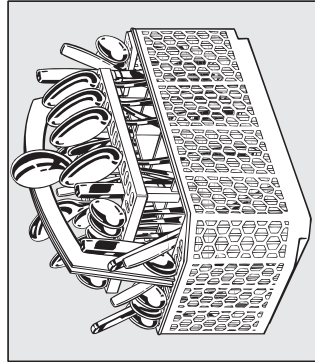
■ Place small spoons in the individual slots to either side of the cutlery basket.

Cutlery insert for the cutlery basket

Use the insert supplied for heavily soiled spoons. The insert separates the items so that they can be more easily accessed by water.



■ Fit it into the cutlery basket if required.



■ Insert cutlery with the handles facing downwards, and distribute them evenly along the insert.

Operation

Detergent

⚠ Only use detergents formulated for domestic dishwashers. Do not use washing-up liquid.

Miele branded dishwasher cleaning products are available from the Miele Spare Parts Department or via the Internet at www.miele-shop.com.

Active ingredients

Modern detergents contain various active ingredients, the most important of which are:

- Phosphates to prevent calcification.
- Alkalies to aid removal of dried on soiling.
- Enzymes to break down starch and dissolve protein.
- Oxygen based bleaching agents to remove coloured stains (e.g. tea, coffee, tomato sauce).

Most dishwasher detergents contain phosphates and are mildly alkaline with enzymes and oxygen based bleaching agents. Phosphate free products are rare.

Types of detergent:

- Powder and liquid gel detergents. These detergents allow you to adjust the amount dispensed according to the size of load and level of soiling.
- Tab detergents. These are suitable for most levels of soiling.

A variety of combination products is also available (see section "Additional functions, Combi-tab", depending on model).

In addition to detergent, combi tabs contain rinse aid and salt substitutes. Combi tabs are available as "3 in 1" or, when they also contain other components such as glass and stainless steel protective additives and enhanced cleaning power, as "4 in 1", "5 in 1" etc. Refer to the manufacturer's packaging as to whether the combi tabs are suitable for the water hardness level in your area. Please note that the cleaning and drying results of tab detergents can vary greatly.

For optimum cleaning and drying results use Miele dishwasher detergent and add Miele salt and Miele rinse aid separately.

Dispensing

- Follow the dosage recommended on the packaging.
- Unless directed otherwise, use one detergent tab or add 20 to 30 ml detergent in compartment II, depending on the level of soiling. With very heavy soiling you can also add a small amount of detergent to compartment I (see "Programme chart").
- Do not use tabs with the "Quick wash" programme, as they will not dissolve properly.

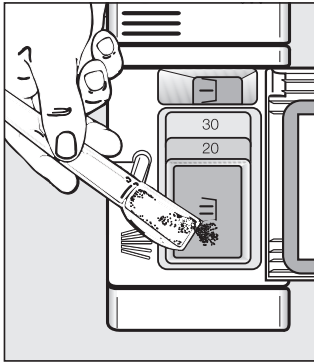
Failure to dispense the recommended amount of detergent may impair cleaning results.

Operation

⚠ Avoid inhalation of powder detergents and do not ingest dishwasher detergent. Dishwasher detergents contain irritant or corrosive ingredients which can cause burning in the nose, mouth and throat if swallowed, or inhibit breathing. Consult a doctor immediately if detergent has been swallowed or inhaled.

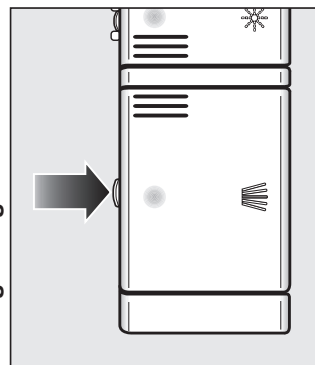
Keep detergent and other household agents out of the reach of children at all times. Keep children away from the dishwasher when the door is open. There could still be detergent residues in the cabinet. To avoid the danger of children coming into contact with the dishwasher detergent, only add detergent just before starting the programme and close the door, activating the child safety lock (if your dishwasher is fitted with one).

The flap is always open at the end of a programme.



- Add the required amount of detergent and close the flap.
- Make sure that the detergent packaging is properly closed after use to avoid it getting damp and becoming lumpy.

Adding detergent



- Press the opening catch on the detergent dispenser. The flap will spring open.

32

Operation

Starting a programme

- Turn the programme selector clockwise or anti-clockwise to the required programme.

The ◇ / ⊕ indicator light will flash.

- Press the ◇ / ⊕ button.

The programme will begin. The ◇ / ⊕ and 〰 indicators will light up.

A programme can only be cancelled in the first few minutes. Otherwise the programme must continue to the end so that important programme stages (e.g. reactivating the water softener) are not omitted.

Programme sequence indicators

After a programme has been started the current stage of the programme is indicated by the programme sequence indicator lights.

Switching on

- Make sure the spray arms are not obstructed.
- Close the door.
- Open the stopcock, if it is closed.
- Switch the dishwasher on using the ⊕ button.

The ⊕ programme sequence indicator light will come on if the programme selector has not been turned to a programme.

Selecting a programme

Choose your programme according to the type of load and how dirty it is.

The different programmes and their uses are described in the Programme chart later on in this booklet.


33

Operation

At the end of a programme

The  programme sequence indicator will light up when the programme is finished.

The dishwasher can now be opened and unloaded (see "Unloading the dishwasher").

 To prevent the risk of steam damage to the worktop edging above the dishwasher, it is advisable to leave the door closed until you are ready to unload the crockery. Alternatively you can open the door fully until the crockery is cool enough to unload. Do not leave the door only partially open.

Switching off

At the end of a programme:

- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.

The dishwasher will continue to use electricity until it is switched off with the  button.

If the dishwasher is not going to be used for a longer period of time, e. g. whilst on holiday, the stopcock should be turned off.

Unloading the dishwasher

Dishes tend to break and chip more easily when they are hot.

Allow the dishes to cool until they are comfortable enough to handle before unloading them.

If you open the door fully after switching off, the dishes will cool much faster.

- First unload the lower basket, then the upper basket and finally the cutlery tray (depending on model). This will prevent water drops from the upper basket and cutlery tray from falling onto the dishes in the lower basket.

Operation

Changing a programme

If the detergent dispenser flap has already opened, do not change the programme.

If a programme has already started and you wish to change it, proceed as follows:

- Press the  /  button for at least one second.

The programme will be cancelled. The  /  indicator light will flash.

- Select the programme you want, and then start it.

Interrupting a programme

A programme is interrupted as soon as the door is opened.

When the door is closed again, the programme will continue from the point it was at before the door was opened.

 Water in the dishwasher may be hot. Danger of scalding.









Only open the door if absolutely necessary and exercise extreme caution when doing so. Before closing the door again, leave it ajar for approx. 20 seconds. This will enable the temperature in the wash cabinet to settle. Then close the door firmly, making sure that it clicks into place.

Operation

Additional functions

Factory default setting

If you have altered any settings from the factory default, you can re-set them back to the factory default settings as follows:

- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.
- Turn the programme selector to the "12 o'clock" position.
- Press the Start/Stop button  /  in, and **while holding it in** switch the dishwasher on using the  button. Keep the  /  button pressed in until the  /  indicator light comes on.

If this does not happen, start the procedure from the beginning again.


- Turn the programme selector to the "11 o'clock" position.






The  programme sequence indicator light will not come on.

- Press the  /  button.

The  programme sequence indicator will flash briefly once at intervals.

- Turn the programme selector to the "9 o'clock" position.


The  programme sequence indicator light shows whether a setting other than the factory default setting has been set.

- If the  programme sequence indicator light is flashing:
All settings are factory default settings.
- If the  programme sequence indicator light is not lit up:
At least one setting has been altered from the factory default setting.
- To reset to the factory default settings, press the  /  button.
- Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.

Cleaning and care

- When the dishwasher is being loaded, food and drink residues may drip onto the sides of the dishwasher door. These surfaces are outside the wash cabinet and are not accessed by water from the spray arms. Any soiling should be wiped off these surfaces before the door is closed.

Cleaning the door front

 Remove any soiling immediately. If not, it might become impossible to remove and could cause the outer surface to alter or discolour.


- Clean the front using a damp Miele microfibre E-cloth or with a sponge and a solution of hot water and washing-up liquid. Then dry with a soft cloth.

To avoid damaging the external surfaces, do not use:

- cleaning agents containing soda, ammonia, acids or chlorides,
- cleaning agents containing descaling agents,
- abrasive cleaning agents, e.g. powder cleaners and cream cleaners.
- solvent-based cleaning agents,
- stainless steel cleaning agents,
- dishwasher cleaner,
- oven sprays,
- glass cleaning agents,
- hard, abrasive sponges and brushes, e.g. pot scourers,
- sharp metal scrapers.

Check your dishwasher regularly (approx. every 4 - 6 months). This way faults and problems can be avoided.

Miele branded cleaning and conditioning products are available from the Miele Spare Parts Department or via the Internet at www.miele-shop.com.

 The external surfaces of the dishwasher are susceptible to scratching. Contact with unsuitable cleaning agents can alter or discolour the outer surfaces.

Cleaning the wash cabinet

The wash cabinet is largely self-cleaning, provided that the correct amount of detergent is always used.

If, however, there are limescale or grease deposits in the cabinet, these can be removed with a proprietary dishwasher cleaner or conditioner.

Cleaning the door and the door seal

- Wipe the door seals regularly with a damp cloth to remove food deposits.

Cleaning and care

Cleaning the filters in the wash cabinet

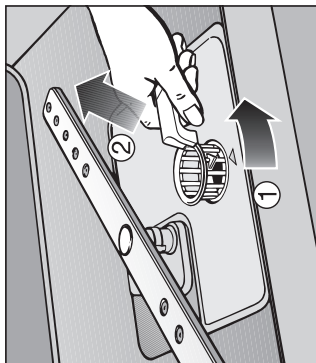
The filter combination in the base of the wash cabinet retains coarse soil from the suds solution, preventing it accessing the circulation system and re-entering the cabinet through the spray arms.

⚠ The dishwasher must not be used without all the filters in place.

Collection of coarse soil may cause the filters to clog. The level of soiling and time it takes before the filters need cleaning will vary depending on use.

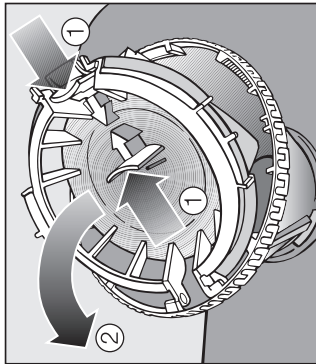
Check the condition of the filters regularly and clean them if necessary.

- Switch the dishwasher off.



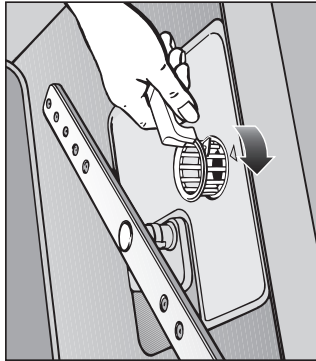
- Turn the handle anti-clockwise to release the filter combination ①.
- Lift the filter combination out of the dishwasher ②. Remove any coarse particles and rinse the filter well under running water. Use a nylon brush if necessary.

Cleaning and care



To clean the inside of the filter, the flap must be opened:

- Press catches ① together in the direction of the arrows as shown, and open the filter ②.
- Rinse all the filters under running water.
- Then close the flap so that the catch engages.



- Replace the filter combination so that it lies flat in the base of the wash cabinet.
- Then turn the handle clockwise, until the arrows line up, to lock the filter combination in place.

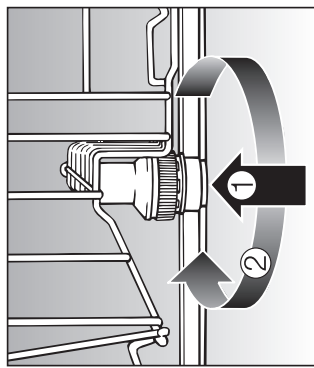
⚠ Take care when you are fitting the filter combination that it is secured in position correctly. Otherwise coarse soil could get into the circulation system and cause a blockage.

Cleaning and care

Cleaning the spray arms

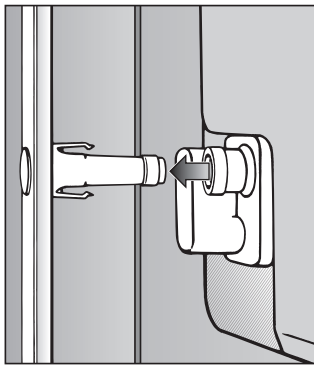
Particles of food can get stuck in the spray arm jets and bearings. The spray arms should therefore be inspected and cleaned regularly (approx. every 4 - 6 months).

- Switch the dishwasher off.
- Remove the spray arms as follows:
 - Take out the cutlery tray (if your dishwasher is fitted with one).
 - Push the **top** spray arm upwards to engage the inner ratchet. Then unscrew the spray arm.

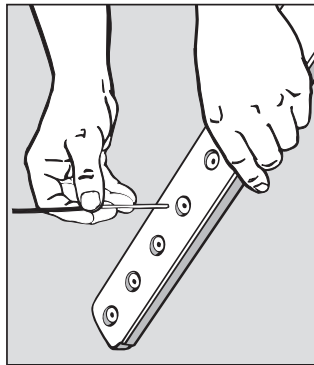


- Push the **middle** spray arms upwards
 - ① to engage the ratchet. Then unscrew the spray arm ②.

- Remove the lower basket.



- Pull the **lower** spray arm firmly upwards to remove it.



- Use a pointed object to push food particles into the spray arm jets.
- Rinse thoroughly under running water.
- Replace the spray arms and check that they rotate freely.

40

Problem solving guide







With the aid of the following guide, faults in the performance of the appliance, some of which may result from incorrect operation can be put right without contacting the Service Department.

⚠ Repairs should only be carried out by a suitably qualified and trained person in strict accordance with current local and national safety regulations. Unauthorised or incorrect repairs could cause personal injury or damage to the appliance.

Technical problems		
Problem	Possible cause	Remedy
No indicator lights are lit up or flashing.	The appliance is not plugged in. The fuse has tripped.	Insert the plug and switch on at the socket. Reset or replace the fuse. (Minimum fuse rating - see data plate).
The dishwasher does not start after the ◇ / ▽ button has been pressed.	The programme selector is not pointing to a programme position.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Turn the programme selector to the required programme. – Press the ◇ / ▽ button.
The dishwasher stops during a programme.	The fuse has tripped.	Reset or replace the fuse. (Minimum fuse rating - see data plate).






41

Problem solving guide

Problem	Possible cause	Remedy
The ,  and  programme sequence indicator lights flash simultaneously.	There may be a technical fault.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the water inlet filter and clean the drain pump and non-return valve as described in "Maintenance". If this does not resolve the problem, switch the dishwasher off using the  button. <p>After a few seconds:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch the dishwasher on. Turn the programme selector to the required programme. Press the  /  button. <p>If the programme sequence indicator lights flash again, there is a technical fault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Call the Service Department.
The drain pump works even when the door is open.	The Waterproof system has reacted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Close the stopcock. Call the Service Department.


42

Problem solving guide

The dishwasher does not fill/drain.		
Problem	Possible cause	Remedy
The  /  check light flashes.	The stopcock is closed.	Open the stopcock fully.
The dishwasher stops during a programme.		Before rectifying the problem you must:
The  /  check light flashes.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.
	Water intake is restricted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open the stopcock fully. Clean the water inlet filter. See "Maintenance". The water pressure at the intake is lower than 30 kPa (0.3 bar). <p>Seek professional advice.</p>
	Water outlet is restricted, water remains in the wash cabinet at the end of a programme.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the filter combination. See "Cleaning and care". Clean the drain pump. See "Maintenance". Clean the non-return valve. See "Maintenance". Remove any kink in the drain hose.

43

Problem solving guide

General problems		
Problem	Possible cause	Remedy
Detergent residue is left in the dispenser at the end of a programme.	The dispenser was still damp when detergent was added.	Make sure the dispenser is dry before adding detergent.
The detergent dispenser lid cannot be closed properly.	Clogged detergent residue is blocking the catch.	Clean the detergent from the catch.
At the end of a programme there is a film of moisture on the inside of the door and the interior walls.	This is caused by the drying system and does not indicate a fault.	The moisture will dissipate after a short while.
Water remains in the wash cabinet at the end of a programme.		Before rectifying the problem you must: – Switch the dishwasher off using the  button.
	The filter combination in the wash cabinet is clogged.	Clean the filter combination. See "Cleaning and care".
	The drain pump or non-return valve may be blocked.	Clean the drain pump or the non-return valve. See "Maintenance".
	The drain hose is kinked.	Remove any kink from the drain hose.

44

Problem solving guide

Noises			
Problem	Possible cause	Remedy	
Knocking noise in the wash cabinet.	A spray arm is knocking against an item in a basket.	Interrupt the programme, and rearrange the items which are obstructing the spray arm.	
Rattling noise in the wash cabinet.	Items of crockery are insecure in the wash cabinet.	Interrupt the programme, and rearrange the items of crockery.	
Knocking noise in the water pipes.	This may be caused by the on-site installation or the cross-section of the piping.	This has no influence on dishwasher function. If in doubt, contact a suitably qualified plumber.	

45

Problem solving guide

Unsatisfactory washing result		
Problem	Possible cause	Remedy
The dishes are not clean.	The dishes were not loaded correctly.	See notes in "Loading the dishwasher"
	The programme was not powerful enough.	Select a more intensive programme. See Programme chart.
	Not enough detergent was dispensed.	Use more detergent, or change your detergent.
	Items are blocking the path of the spray arms.	Rearrange the items so that the spray arms can rotate freely.
	The filter combination in the base of the wash cabinet is not clean or is not correctly fitted. This may cause the spray arm jets to get blocked.	Clean and/or fit the filter combination correctly. Clean the spray arm jets. See "Cleaning and care".
	The non-return valve is open and blocked. Dirty water has flowed back into the wash cabinet.	Clean the drain pump and the non-return valve. See "Maintenance - Cleaning the drain pump and non-return valve".
Smearing appears on glassware and cutlery, there is a bluish sheen on the surface of glassware; film can be wiped off.	The rinsing agent dosage is set too high.	Reduce the dosage. See "Before using for the first time - Rinse aid".

Problem solving guide

Problem	Possible cause	Remedy
Dishes, cutlery and glasses are not dry or are flecked.	The amount of rinse aid may be insufficient, or the rinse aid reservoir empty.	Replenish the reservoir, increase the dosage or change the brand of rinse aid. See "Before using for the first time".
White residue is visible on cutlery and crockery, clouding occurs on glassware; film can be wiped off.	Crockery was taken out of the cabinet too soon.	Leave it in for longer. See "Operation".
	Not enough rinse aid was used.	Increase the dosage. See "Before using for the first time - Rinse aid".
	There is no salt in the salt reservoir.	Fill the salt reservoir. See "Before using for the first time - Filling the salt reservoir".
	The salt reservoir cap has not been screwed on correctly.	Replace it, making sure that it screws back on correctly.
	An unsuitable combination detergent has been used.	Change your detergent. Use a standard liquid, tablet or powder detergent.
	The water softener is programmed to a setting which is too low.	Select a higher water softener setting. See "Before using for the first time".

Problem solving guide

Problem	Possible cause	Remedy
Glassware has a brown or blue tinge, and film cannot be wiped off.	This may be caused by the detergent.	Change your detergent.
Glassware is dull and discoloured; film cannot be wiped off.	The glasses are not dishwasher-proof. The surfaces are affected.	There is no remedy. Purchase glassware which is dishwasher-proof.
Tea or lipstick stains have not been completely removed.	The wash temperature of the selected programme was too low.	Select a programme with a higher wash temperature.
Plastic items are discoloured.	The bleaching effect of the detergent used is too low. Natural dyes e.g. from carrots, tomatoes or ketchup may be the cause. The amount of detergent used or its bleaching effect was not sufficient to deal with natural dyes.	Change your detergent.
There are rust stains on cutlery.	The affected items are not corrosion resistant. A programme was not run after dishwasher salt was added. Traces of salt have got into the wash cycle.	Use more detergent. See "Operation". Discolouration is irreversible. There is no remedy. Purchase cutlery which is dishwasher-proof. Always run the Quick wash programme, without any crockery in the dishwasher and without selecting the Turbo function (if present), after adding dishwasher salt.
	The salt reservoir cap has not been screwed on correctly.	Replace it, making sure that it screws back on correctly.

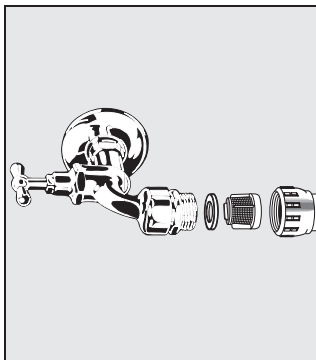
48

Maintenance

Cleaning the water inlet filter

A filter is incorporated in the screw connection of the valve on the water inlet hose. The filter must be cleaned when dirty, otherwise insufficient water flows into the wash cabinet.

⚠ The plastic housing of the water connection contains an electrical component. It must not be dipped in water.



Recommendation

If the mains water contains a large amount of insoluble substances, we recommend fitting a large-area filter in the connection between the stopcock and the water inlet hose threaded union. This filter is available from the Miele Spares Parts dept.

- Carefully remove the seal.
- Withdraw the filter using pointed pliers and rinse clean under running water.
- Replace the filter and seal, making sure they are sitting correctly.
- Reconnect the inlet hose to the stopcock, making sure it goes on correctly and is not cross-threaded.
- Turn on the stopcock gradually to test for leaks. If there is a leak, the inlet hose might not be on securely, or it may have been screwed on at an angle. Unscrew and reconnect the water inlet valve correctly.

Cleaning the filter:

- Disconnect the dishwasher from the mains supply. Switch off at the mains socket and withdraw the plug.
- Close the stopcock.
- Unscrew the inlet hose.

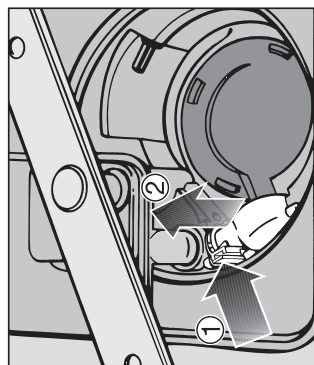
49

Maintenance

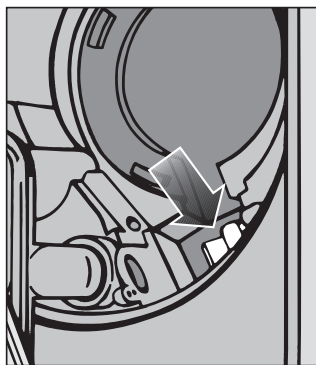
Cleaning the drain pump and non-return valve

If the water has not been pumped away at the end of a programme the drain pump or the non-return valve might be blocked. They are, however, easy to clean.

- Disconnect the dishwasher from the mains supply. Switch off at the mains socket and withdraw the plug.
- Take the filter combination out of the wash cabinet (see "Cleaning and care - Cleaning the filters in the wash cabinet").
- Scoop the water out of the cabinet using a suitable container or utensil.



- Press the catch for the non-return valve inwards ①.
- Lift out the non-return valve ②, and rinse well under running water.
- Remove all foreign objects from the non-return valve.



The drain pump is situated under the non-return valve (see arrow).

- Remove all foreign objects from the drain pump (watch out for glass or bone splinters which are particularly difficult to detect and could cause injury). Turn the drain pump impeller by hand to check that there are no more obstructions. You will feel a little resistance when you turn the impeller.

- Carefully replace the non-return valve and secure it with the catch.

⚠ Ensure that the catch engages correctly.

After sales service

Repairs

In the event of any faults that you cannot remedy yourself, please contact:

- Your Miele dealer, or
- the Miele Service Department (see back cover for address).

Please note that telephone calls may be monitored and recorded to improve our service.

Future updates

The programme update function is designed to enable a service technician to update your appliance's electronics in keeping with advances in technology.

Information regarding programme updates will be made known by the Miele Company as and when such developments become available.

For testing institutes

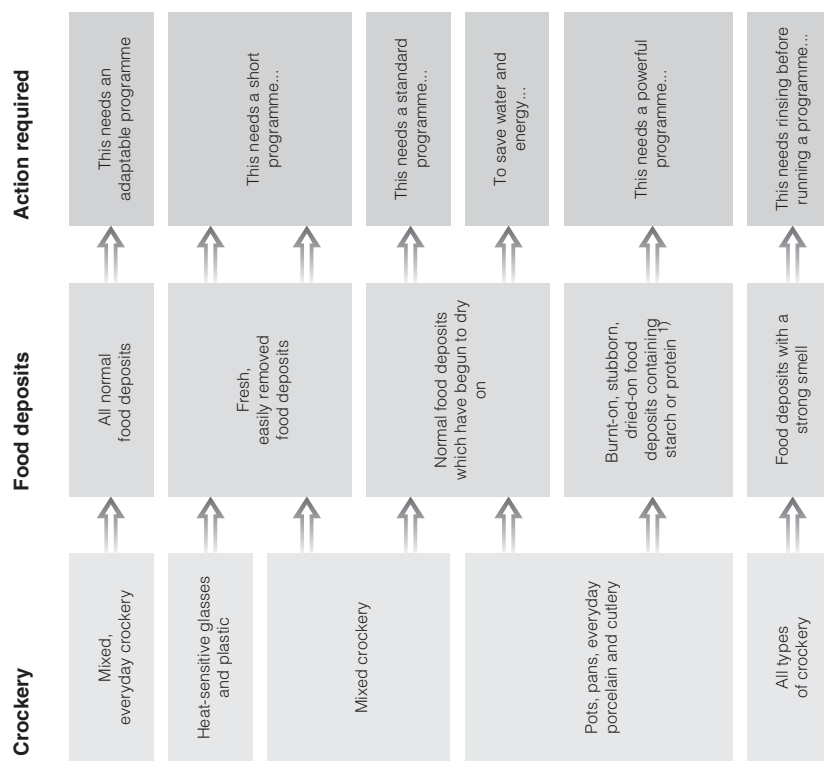
All information required regarding comparison testing and measuring noise levels is given in the "Comparison tests" leaflet.

The latest version of this leaflet can be ordered on-line from:

- testinfo@miele.de

- Please give your postal address, as well as the model type and number of your dishwasher (see data plate).

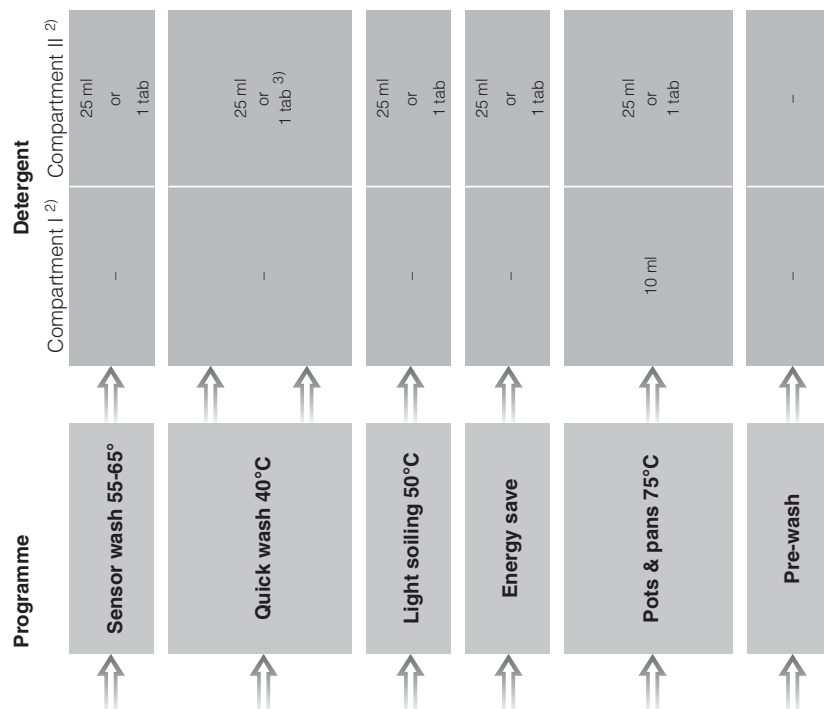
Programme chart



¹⁾ Food such as potatoes, pasta, rice or casseroles can leave starchy deposits. Deposits containing protein can be left by food such as fried meat, fish or eggs and bakes.

52

Programme chart



²⁾ see "Detergent"

³⁾ In some cases, tabs may not dissolve completely.

53

Programme chart

Programme	Programme sequence				Drying
	Pre-wash	Main wash °C	Interim rinse	Final rinse °C	
			1	2	
Sensor wash 55-65 °C	Variable programme sequence, sensor controlled adjustment according to the amount of crockery and level of food deposits				
	If required	55-65	If required	65	X
Pots & pans 75 °C	X	75	X	65	X
Energy save		45	X	60	X
Pre-wash	X				
Quick wash 40 °C		40	X	45	X
Light soiling 50 °C		50	X	65	X

Programme chart

Consumption 1)			Duration 1)	
Energy		Water		
Cold water connection (15 °C) kWh	Hot water connection (55 °C) kWh	Litres	Cold water connection (15 °C) h:min	Hot water connection (55 °C) h:min
1.30-1.60	0.75-1.00	13-22	1:45-2:30	1:35-2:16
1.70	1.20	17	2:39	2:29
1.05	0.70	13	2:54	2:44
0.02	0.02	5	0:12	0:12
0.70	0.22	13	0:38	0:30
1.25	0.90	13	1:32	1:20

1) Values quoted are in accordance with EN 50242. The durations given will vary depending on individual conditions and the effect the sensors have on the load.

On G 2XXX models (see data plate), the max. energy consumption is 0.1 kWh higher and the water consumption is up to 1 litre higher than shown above.

Optional accessories

To make the most of your dishwasher

Optional accessories for particular purposes are available from your Miele dealer, the Spare Parts Department or online at www.miele-shop.com (some may be supplied as standard, depending on model).

If you would like to ...	you will need to order ...
... wash long-stemmed glassware	... a glassware insert for the upper basket
... wash bottles, e. g. milk or baby bottles	... a bottle holder
... wash additional items of cutlery	... a small cutlery basket for the lower basket
... wash a lot of glasses	... a glassware insert for the lower basket
... wash large plates	... an insert for plates up to: - 33 cm diameter - 35 cm diameter

56

Electrical connection

Non-rewireable plugs BS 1363

The fuse cover must be refitted when changing the fuse, and if the fuse cover is lost, the plug must not be used until a suitable replacement is obtained. The colour of the correct replacement cover is that of the coloured insert in the base of the plug, or the colour that is embossed in words on the base of the plug (as applicable to the design of plug fitted).

Replacement fuses should be ASTA approved to BS 1362 and have the correct rating. Replacement fuses and fuse covers may be purchased from your local electrical supplier.

WARNING: THIS APPLIANCE MUST BE EARTHED

Electrical connection U.K.

△ All electrical work must be carried out by a suitably qualified and competent person, in accordance with current local and national safety regulations (BS 7671 in the UK).

Ensure power is not supplied to the appliance until after installation work has been carried out.

The appliance is supplied with a mains cable with moulded plug ready for connection to a 230-240V mains supply. Please ensure the connection data quoted on the data plate match the household mains supply.

Connection should be made via a suitable switched socket which is easily accessible after installation.

For extra safety it is advisable to install a suitable residual current device (RCD). Contact a qualified electrician for advice.

Do not connect via an extension lead. Extension leads do not guarantee the required safety of the appliance (e.g. danger of overheating).

57

Plumbing

The Miele waterproof anti-leak system

Providing your dishwasher has been installed correctly, the Miele waterproof anti-leak system will protect you from water damage throughout its lifetime.

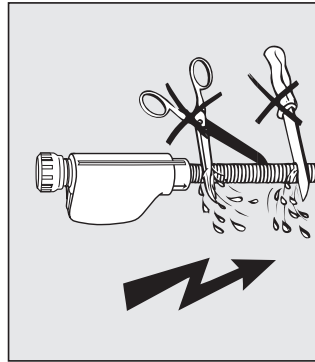
Connection to the water supply

⚠ Water in the dishwasher must not be used as drinking water.

- The dishwasher may be connected to a cold or hot water supply, max. 60 °C. We would only recommend connection to a hot water supply if it is economical, e.g. a solar powered supply. When connected to a hot water supply all programme stages which would otherwise be carried out with cold water will be carried out with hot water.
- The inlet hose is approx. 1.5 m long. A 1.5 metre long flexible metal extension hose, pressure tested to 14,000 kPa/ 140 bar, is available as an optional accessory if required.
- A stopcock with a $\frac{3}{4}$ " male thread must be provided on site.
- This appliance is constructed to comply with IEC/EN/DIN 61770 // VDE 0700 Section 600, and may be connected to a suitable supply without an extra non-return valve if national regulations permit.

- The water pressure (flow pressure at the take-off point) must be between 30 and 1000 kPa (0.3 and 10 bar). If the water pressure is too high, a pressure reducer valve must be fitted.

⚠ To avoid any damage to the appliance, the dishwasher must only be connected to a fully vented plumbing system.



⚠ The inlet hose must **not** be shortened or damaged in any way as it contains electrical components (see illustration).

Plumbing

Drainage

- The appliance drainage system is fitted with a non-return valve, which prevents dirty water from flowing back into the dishwasher via the drain hose.
- The dishwasher is supplied with approx. 1.5 m of flexible drain hose with an internal diameter of 22 mm.
- The drain hose can be extended using a connection piece to attach a further length of hose. The drainage length must not be longer than 4 m, and the delivery head must not exceed 1 m.
- If the hose is to be directly fitted to the drainage outlet on site, use the hose clip supplied (see installation diagram).
- The hose can be directed to the left or the right of the appliance.
- The on-site connector for the drain hose can be adapted to different widths of hose. If the connector protrudes too far into the drain hose, it will need to be shortened. Otherwise the drain hose may become blocked.
- The drain hose must not be shortened.

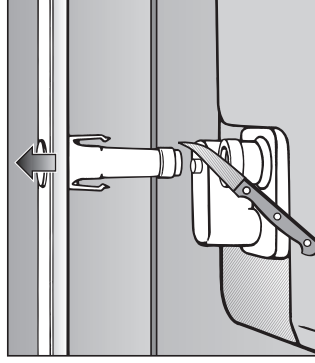
⚠ Make sure that there are no kinks in the hose, and that it is not squashed or stretched.

Venting the drainage system

If the on-site drain connection is situated lower than the guide path for the bottom basket rollers in the open door, the drainage system must be vented. Otherwise a siphoning effect during a programme can cause the appliance to empty itself of water.

To vent it:

- Open the dishwasher door fully.



- Pull the lower spray arm firmly upwards to remove it.
- Cut off the top of the vent valve in the wash cabinet.

Technical data

Dishwasher model	G 1XXX	G 2XXX
Height freestanding	84.5 cm (adjustable +3.5 cm)	-
Height built-in	80.5 cm (adjustable + 6.5 cm)	84.5 cm (adjustable + 6.5 cm)
Height of building-in recess	Min. 80.5 cm (+ 6.5 cm)	Min. 84.5 cm (+ 6.5 cm)
Width	59.8 cm	59.8 cm
Width of building-in recess	60 cm	60 cm
Depth:		
Freestanding	60 cm	-
Built-in	57 cm	57 cm
Weight	Max. 66 kg	Max. 58 kg
Voltage	230 V	230 V
Connected load	2200 W	2200 W
Fuse rating	10 A	10 A
Test certificates awarded	KEMA, VDE, radio and television suppressed	KEMA, VDE, radio and television suppressed
Water pressure (flow rate)	30 - 1000 kPa (0.3 - 10 bar)	30 - 1000 kPa (0.3 - 10 bar)
Hot water connection	Up to max. 60 °C	Up to max. 60 °C
Delivery head	Max. 1 m	Max. 1 m
Drainage length	Max. 4 m	Max. 4 m
Mains cable	Approx. 1.7 m	Approx. 1.7 m
Capacity	12/14 place settings*	12/14 place settings*

* depending on model

60

United Kingdom

Miele Co. Ltd.
Fairacres, Marcham Road
Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 1TW
Tel: 0845 365 0555
Fax: 0845 365 0777
Customer Contact Centre Tel: 0845 365 6600
E-mail: info@miele.co.uk
Internet: www.miele.co.uk

Australia

Miele Australia Pty. Ltd.
ABN 96 005 635 398
1 Gilbert Park Drive, Knoxfield, VIC 3180
Tel: (03) 9764 7130, Fax: (03) 9764 7149
Internet: www.miele.com.au

China

Miele Shanghai
Suite 4105-06, Plaza 66
1266 Nanjing Road West
Jing An District
Shanghai 200040, PRC
Tel: +86 21 6288 4200, Fax: +86 21 6288 4100
E-mail: miele.shanghai@cn.miele.com
Internet: www.miele.cn

Miele (Hong Kong) Limited

4/F - 4101, Manhattan Place
23 Wang Tai Road
Kowloon Bay
Hong Kong
Tel: (852) 2610 1331
Fax: (852) 2610 1013
Email: mielehk@miele.com.hk

India

Miele Appliances India Pvt. Ltd.
Ground Floor, Copia Corporate Suites
Plot No. 9, Jasola
New Delhi - 110025
Tel: 011-46 900 000, Fax: 011-46 900 001
E-mail: customer-care@miele.in
Internet: www.miele.in

Germany - Miele & Cie. KG

Carl-Miele-Straße 29, 33332 Gütersloh



Ireland

Miele Ireland Ltd.
Broomhill Road, Tallaght, Dublin 24
Tel: (01) 461 0710, Fax: (01) 461 07 97
E-Mail: info@miele.ie
Internet: www.miele.ie

New Zealand

Miele New Zealand Limited
Unit L, 10-20 Sylvia Park Road
Mt. Wellington, 1060, Auckland, NZ
Tel: 0800 264 353, Fax: 0800 463 453
Internet: www.miele.co.nz

Singapore

Miele Southeast Asia
Miele Pte. Ltd.
163 Penang Road
04 - 02/03 Winsland House II
Singapore 238463
Tel: +65 6735 1191, Fax: +65 6735 1161
E-Mail: infosea@miele.com.sg
Internet: www.miele.sg

South Africa

Miele (Pty) Ltd
63 Peter Place, Bryanston 2194
P.O. Box 69434, Bryanston 2021
Tel: +27 (0) 11 548-1900
Fax: +27 (0) 11 548-1935
E-mail: info@miele.co.za
Internet: www.miele.co.za

United Arab Emirates

Miele Appliances Ltd.
P.O. Box 11 47 82
Gold & Diamond Park
Sheikh Zayed Road
Building 6 / Offices Nos. 6-214 to 6-220
Dubai
Tel: +971-4-341 84 44
Fax: +971-4-341 88 52
E-Mail: info@miele.ae
Internet: www.miele.ae

Alteration rights reserved/
G1021/G1022/G2021/G2022 / 0410

M-Nr. 07 502 050 / 01



Fisher & Paykel

Front loading dryers

**Installation instructions
and User guide**

NZ AU SG HK IN ME

Contents

Introduction	2
Safety and warnings	3
Installation instructions	5
Installation options	6
Installation – AeroSense™ and AeroLogic™ dryers	8
Installation – AeroDry™ dryer	9
Specifications	11
Dryer wall mounting instructions	12
Before you dry	13
Capacity, Sorting and loading, Drying times	13
Cleaning the lint filter	14
AeroSense™ dryer	14
Using your dryer	15
Dryness levels	15
1 hour setting	16
Key lock	17
Temperature settings	18
Delay start	19
Wrinkle free	20
AeroLogic™ and AeroDry™ dryers	
Using your dryer, Drying cycles	
Drying times	
Drying rack	
Operating problems	
Manufacturer's Warranty	
Customer Care	



Caution, risk of fire – this is a safety symbol.
Failure to follow the warnings outlined in these user instructions can cause a fire hazard.

Important!

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

The models shown in this User Guide may not be available in all markets and are subject to change at any time. For current details about model and specification availability in your country, please visit our local website listed on the back cover or contact your local Fisher & Paykel dealer.

2 Introduction

Congratulations on purchasing a Fisher & Paykel dryer. Your new dryer will give you the convenience of tumble drying and your clothes the advantage of not being subjected to the harsh overdrying effects of the sun. Your clothes will feel softer, retain their shape better and will require less ironing.

At Fisher & Paykel we aim to provide products that are simple to use, ergonomic and energy efficient. Thousands of tonnes of washing and 75 years of laundry experience have been programmed into your dryer to help give you the best possible performance.

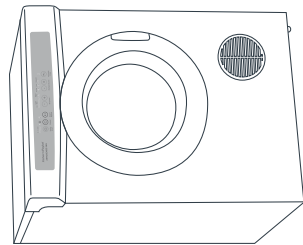
We hope you enjoy your new dryer. We have certainly enjoyed designing it.

Cost to dry

Many people are reluctant to use a dryer because they believe they are expensive to run. True enough, sunshine is free, but we don't always have sunshine and the benefits to you and your clothes can make machine drying worthwhile.

The following example of a 2.5 kg load is used to demonstrate the cost of drying.

- 4 T-shirts
- 1 Sweat Shirt
- 5 Pair Underpants
- 5 Pairs Socks
- 1 Pair Trousers
- 2 Pair Shorts
- 3 Handkerchiefs



AeroSense™ dryer

This load was spun at a high spin speed (1000 rpm) and dried in an AeroSense™ dryer on dryness level 4 (Medium dry and Extra dry lights on). The load took 60 minutes to dry.

For example if power costs 20 cents/unit, the load will cost approximately 30 cents to dry (1.48 units x 20c). Check with your local Electricity Supply Authority for your domestic tariff.

Before using your dryer

- Ensure the correct installation has been used for the dryer type. Installation depends on how the dryer is vented.
- Read the Safety and Installation instructions carefully.
- Remove and discard the plastic power cord pin cover (required for transit only).
- Ensure the pieces of tape surrounding the drum opening are removed. **The tape MUST be removed before operating the dryer.**

Safety and warnings 3

⚠ WARNING!

Fire Hazard

Only dry fabrics that have been washed with water.
Do not use heat to dry articles containing foam rubber or similarly textured rubber-like materials. Dry on Airing.
Do not stop a tumble clothes dryer before the end of the drying cycle unless all items are removed and spread out in order to dissipate the heat.
As a clothes dryer produces combustible lint, the user must ensure there is no accumulation of lint around the dryer if it is not vented outdoors.
Take care to prevent the accumulation of lint around the exhaust opening and surrounding area.
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or personal injury.



Dryer use

- The tumble dryer is intended only for drying textile material washed in water.
- The dryer should not be used to dry unwashed items.
- Undergarments that contain metal reinforcements should not be placed in the dryer. Damage to the dryer can result if the metal reinforcements come loose during drying. If you wish to dry these items use a drying rack.
- Check and remove all objects from pockets, eg lighters and matches.
- Never dry rubber articles, fibreglass, or any plastic items or film, eg plastic lined tablecloths and baby bibs.
- Clothes should go through the cool down/airing phase in the final part of the cycle. This ensures items are left at a temperature where they will not be damaged. If for any reason the dryer is stopped before the cycle has finished, dry clothes should be removed immediately and not left in the dryer. Clothes should be spread out to cool and not left bunched up, eg in a clothes basket.
- This dryer has been designed for domestic use only, not for commercial applications, such as massage/beauty clinics where there may be increased lint accumulation or flammable materials in the atmosphere or load.
- Lint must not be allowed to accumulate around the dryer.
- This dryer is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities; or lack of experience and knowledge, unless given supervision or instruction concerning the use of the dryer by a person responsible for their safety.
- Young children should be supervised to ensure they do not play with the dryer.

Important!

If you are using an extension cord or a portable electrical outlet device (eg multi-socket outlet box), ensure that it is positioned so that it does not come into contact with water or moisture.

4 Safety and warnings

Lint

Accumulated lint in the dryer can become a fire hazard, it also reduces the efficiency of the dryer by causing longer drying times and increased power consumption.

- Clean the lint filter before every load.
- Ensure the area around the dryer is clear of lint.
- At regular intervals have the interior of the dryer cleaned of any accumulated lint. This must be done by a qualified person for electrical safety.
- If you change the mounting of the dryer from upright to inverted or vice versa, the dryer must be cleaned internally by a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer.

Spontaneous combustion

Important!

To reduce the risk of fire in a tumble dryer the following should be observed:

- Items that have previously been cleaned in, washed in, soaked in or spotted with flammable liquids or solids, eg petrol/gasoline, kerosene, dry cleaning solvents, vegetable or cooking oil, waxes or other flammable or explosive substances are a hazard and should not be placed in a tumble dryer.
- Highly flammable substances commonly used in domestic environments include acetone, denatured alcohol, petrol/gasoline, kerosene, some brands of spot removers, turpentine, waxes and wax removers. Items that may contain such substances should not be placed in a tumble dryer.
- Oil-affected items can ignite spontaneously, especially when exposed to heat sources such as a tumble dryer. The items become warm causing an oxidation reaction in the oil. This oxidation creates heat. If the heat cannot escape the items can become hot enough to catch fire. Piling, stacking or storing oil-affected items can prevent heat from escaping creating a fire hazard. If it is unavoidable that fabrics that contain vegetable oil, cooking oil or have been contaminated by hair care products, or any other flammable substances, be placed in a tumble dryer, they should first be washed in hot water with extra detergent – this will reduce, but not eliminate the fire hazard. The cool down cycle of the dryer should be used to reduce the temperature of these items. They should not be removed from the tumble dryer or piled or stacked while hot.
- The dryer is not to be used if industrial chemicals have been used for cleaning.
- Fabric Softeners or similar products should not be used in a tumble dryer to eliminate the effects of static electricity, unless this practice is specifically recommended by the manufacturer of the fabric softener product.
- Rubber backed articles, foam rubber (latex foam), clothes or pillows fitted with foam rubber pads, fibreglass, shoes containing rubber, shower caps, babies waterproof napkin covers and waterproof textiles should not be dried in the dryer.
- Items containing rubber (also known as latex foam) or similarly textured rubber like materials should not be dried on any heat setting. Foam rubber material can when heated produce fire by spontaneous combustion.

Installation options 5

Important!

The dryer must be installed in a suitable location.

Do not install the dryer behind a lockable door, sliding door, or behind a door where the hinge is on the opposite side to that of the dryer in such a way that the full opening of the door is inhibited. Ensure the dryer door can always be opened fully.

There are several different ways you can install your dryer.

1. Free standing

The dryer stands on the floor and can easily be moved into position.

2. Plinth*

AeroSense™ and AeroLogic™ models only

A plinth, with adjustable feet, allows the dryer to be:
– matched in height to your washer.
– installed under a bench.

Plinths can be purchased from your dealer.

115 mm Plinth Part No. 94832
60 mm Plinth Part No. 94852

3. Upright wall mounting*

All models

The wall mounting kit allows the dryer to be installed at any desired height minimising the amount of bending and stretching.

Wall Mounting Kit Part No. 502067

4. Inverted wall mounting*

All models

A wall mounting kit and inverted panel allows you to install the dryer above the washer or tub.
Electronic Inverted Panel (NZ/AU) Part No. 427901
Electronic Inverted Panel (Asia/ME) Part No. 427885
Wall Mounting Kit Part No. 502067
Low Ceiling Wall Mounting Kit Part No. P6450

* Contact your dealer for assistance with plinths, inversion kits and wall mounting kits. Note: some additional parts/accessories are not available in all countries.

** Washer sizes: Compact: 560 x 560 mm,
Medium: 600 x 600 mm, Large: 650 x 650 mm.

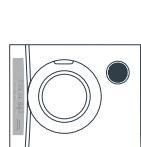


Fig. 1 Free standing

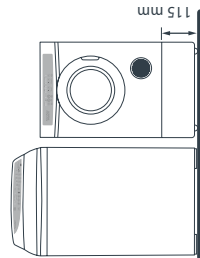


Fig. 2 Plinth height

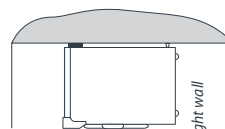


Fig. 3 Upright wall mounting

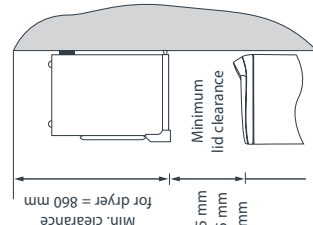


Fig. 4 Inverted wall mounting

6 Installation – AeroSense™ and AeroLogic™ dryers

Correct installation is very important for all dryers to ensure maximum efficiency and safety.

Important!

Never run the dryer unless the airflow system is free from obstruction.

There must be adequate ventilation to avoid the backflow of gases into the room from appliances burning fuels, including open fires, when operating the dryer.

Exhaust air must not be discharged into a flue which is used for exhausting fumes from appliances burning gas or other fuels.

External venting

The dryer has been designed to be externally vented to provide the following advantages:

- Ensures optimum efficiency by preventing recirculation of moist air.
- Eliminates condensation on walls and ceilings.
- Reduces the chance of lint being sucked into the dryer.
- Prevents lint and other fine particles being blown into the room.

All external venting systems should be:

- Made from galvanised metal pipe or be sleeved with a galvanised metal pipe where the vent system goes through a wall or ceiling.
- Exhausted outside and not into another confined space.
- Fitted with a vent cap outside to stop rain water entering the dryer exhaust system.
- Angled to avoid condensation running back into the dryer.
- Less than 2 m long. Special installation is required for ducting over 2 m. Contact a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer.

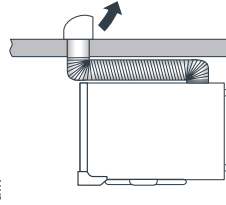


Fig. 5 External venting

DO NOT use the internal vent deflector as an external weather cap as this will cause restriction of the airflow and a loss in performance.

Installation – AeroSense™ and AeroLogic™ dryers

Flush venting

The dryer is vented through a hole in the wall, using a galvanised metal pipe or flexible hose. This is suitable for floor and wall mounted dryers installed against an outside wall.
Kit Vent External 400 mm Hose Part No. 460754

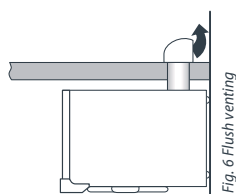


Fig. 6 Flush venting

Movable venting

The dryer is vented using a flexible hose through a hole in the wall. This allows the dryer to be moved from the wall slightly. Suitable for floor mounted dryers only.
Flexible Hose 2 m Part No. 503858

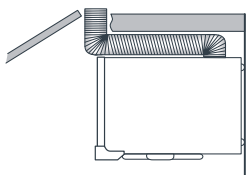


Fig. 7 Movable venting

Window venting

A flexible hose is used to vent the dryer through a window. Maximum hose length is 2 metres.
Flexible Hose 2 m Part No. 503858
Flexible Hose 0.4 m Part No. 460601

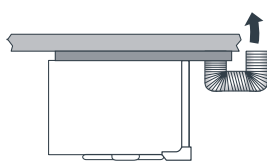


Fig. 8 Venting duct

Venting duct

The dryer is vented using an extendible duct that allows venting to a window or through an existing wall vent. The duct can be used with a flexible hose. Specially suitable for inverted dryers.
Venting Duct Kit Part No. P6451
Flexible Hose 2 m Part No. 503858

Internal venting

A deflector is included with the dryer (Part No. 460822P). If external venting is not at all possible the deflector must be fitted. This screws on to the back of the dryer over the exhaust outlet. The outlet of the vent deflector must be clear of any obstructions to ensure normal and safe operation. The outlet should be directed towards the middle of the dryer (as in Fig.9).

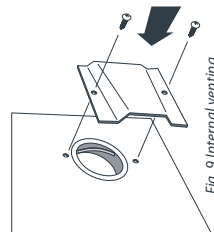


Fig. 9 Internal venting

Note: all efforts should be made to vent the dryer externally, if possible, to avoid moisture build up in the area around the dryer.

Note: not all parts may be available in all countries.

Installation – AeroDry™ dryer

Dryer position

The AeroDry™ dryer is front venting, whereby the air is taken in through the grill at the rear of the dryer and vented out through the grill in the door at the front.

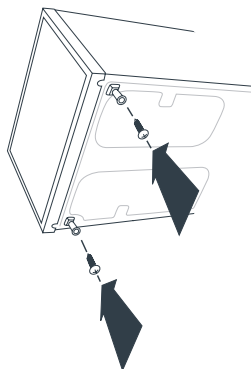


Fig. 10 Spacers

The dryer should be positioned so that the air intake at the rear is unrestricted. The minimum clearance needed from the wall is 50 mm.

Included with this dryer are two plastic spacers. Fitting these on the rear of the dryer will ensure the dryer is correctly positioned away from the wall.

- Use screws provided to fit the spacers (as shown in the diagram).

Directional outlet grill

The outlet grill can be rotated to direct the exhaust air. It should be adjusted so that it points towards an external window or door.

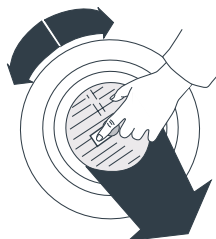


Fig. 11 Directional outlet grill

Specifications

	AeroSense™ and AeroLogic™ dryers	AeroDry™ dryer
Dimensions		
Width	565 mm	565 mm
Depth	560 mm	440 mm
Height	795 mm	795 mm
Electrical	NZ / AU / Asia / Middle East	NZ / AU
Volts	230/240	230/240
Hz	50	50
Amps	8.0	8.0

Note: if the electrical supply cord is damaged it must be replaced by the manufacturer or a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer in order to avoid a hazard.

Dryer wall mounting instructions 9

Tools and parts required:

- 1 x drill and 3 mm bit
- 1 x Phillips screw driver
- 2 x wood screws (14 x 50 timbertite screws)
- 1 x screw driver
- 1 x helper to lift dryer onto bracket

Extra tools and parts for mounting onto a concrete wall:

- 1 x 6 mm bit
- 2 x expanding bolts (M6 x 50)
- 1 x adjustable spanner

Note: read these instructions in conjunction with venting instructions.

- 1 Determine the position of the dryer on the wall and mark the bracket position.
 - A minimum of 70 mm is needed between the top of the bracket and the ceiling for ease of installation.
 - If mounting over a washer allow sufficient room to open the lid of the washer or use a lid catch retainer – Part no. 479273.
 - If the dryer is vented through the mounting wall ensure the venting hole clears any studs.
- 2 Fit the bracket to the wall. Ensure the bracket is securely fastened at both ends into studs capable of supporting at least 108 kg (3 times the weight of the fully loaded dryer). Fit a timber slat (also capable of supporting at least 108 kg) between the studs to mount the bracket onto if the stud position is too wide.
- 3 Fit the spacers using the screws provided. If a timber slat has been used with the wall mounting bracket, pack spacers away from the wall by the same amount.
- 4 Ensure the wall mounting slots on rear panel are clear of the half-punched material before attempting to mount the dryer onto the bracket. We recommend using a screwdriver to puncture the slots completely.
- 5 Mount the dryer on the bracket. Tilt the dryer out from below, engage the bracket in the back panel slots then lower the dryer and rest against the wall.

A WARNING!



Weight Hazard

Use two or more people to move and install the dryer.
Failure to do so can result in back or other injury.

- 6 Fit inverted control panel over the existing panel if necessary (available for AeroSense™ model only).

Dryer wall mounting instructions 10

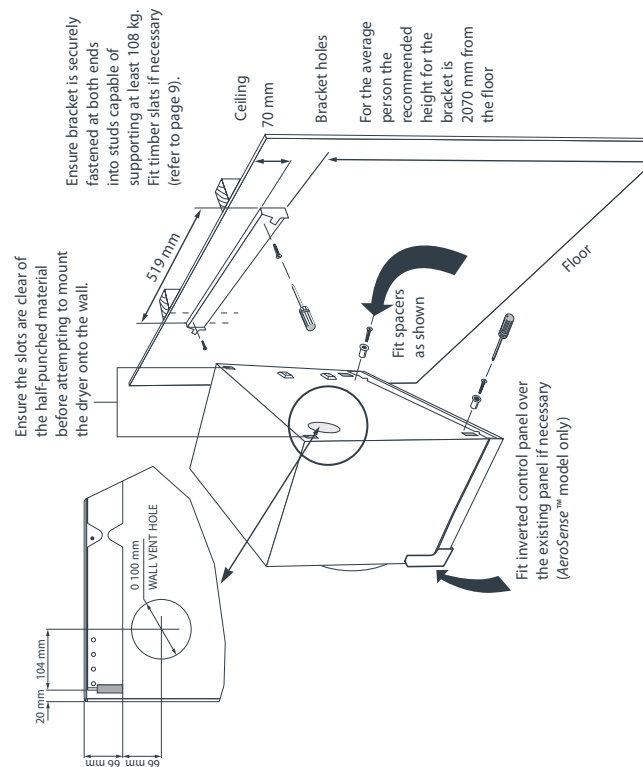


Fig. 12 Wall mounting instructions

Note: if you change mounting from upright to inverted or vice versa the dryer must be cleaned internally by a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer.

Before you dry 11

Capacity

The maximum capacity of your dryer (when the load is dry) is as follows:

Model	NZ/AU	Asia/Middle East
AeroSense™	5.0 kg	6.0 kg
AeroLogic™	5.0 kg	6.0 kg
AeroDry™	4.0 kg	N/A

Note: capacity ratings vary due to the qualifying criteria of different markets.

- Overloading the machine will affect the drying performance, and may damage items.

Sorting and loading

To get the most efficient use of your dryer we recommend you sort your loads.

- Look for a care label on your clothes. This will tell you if they can be safely tumble dried.
- Close zippers, hooks and eyes, etc to reduce snagging and tangling.

Drying times

- Drying very small loads is inefficient. Try to dry medium to large loads.
- Sort your clothes into loads that take a similar time to dry, eg heavier items (towels, T-shirts, flannelette sheets) from light items (synthetics and polyester cotton sheets and shirts). This will prevent some garments becoming overdried while others are still damp.
- Spin clothes at the highest spin speed suitable for the load type. The more water you remove in the wash, the less time it will need to dry (NEVER put dripping wet clothes in or on top of the dryer as excessive water could cause an electrical hazard).

Lint

- Dry lint givers and lint collectors separately.

Lint Givers	Lint Collectors
Towels	Synthetics
Chenille	Corduroy
Nappies	Polyester cottons
	Socks

To reduce creasing

- Shake clothes out and load individually to help clothes dry evenly.
- Laundry permanent press garments separately, eg business shirts.
- Allow enough room for clothes to tumble freely when loading.
- Hang garments as soon as the dryer cycle is completed to reduce the need for ironing.

Cleaning the lint filter 12

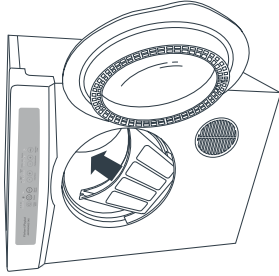
AeroSense™ and AeroLogic™ dryers

It is important to clean the lint filter after every load, as the lint produced in the drying process can become a fire hazard if it is allowed to accumulate in or around your dryer.

The lint filter is located in the door opening.

- Remove the lint filter, open it out and wipe clean with your hand.
- Close the lint filter and place it back in the opening.

Fig. 13 Lint filter – AeroSense™ and AeroLogic™ dryers



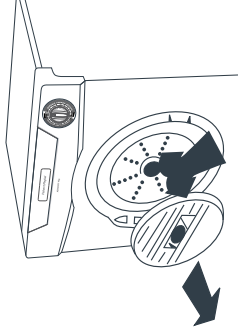
AeroDry™ dryer

The lint filter is located on the door of the dryer behind the directional outlet grill. Lint should be removed from the filter after every load.

- To remove the outlet grill grasp the hub in the centre of the grill and pull. Wipe the filter clean with your hand.
- To replace the grill, locate the hub over the boss in the centre of the door and push firmly.

Note: do not clean your lint filter by vacuuming or wetting it, as this may block the fine pores essential for maximum airflow.

Fig. 14 Lint filter – AeroDry™ dryer



AeroSense™ dryer 13

Your AeroSense™ dryer takes the guess work out of choosing drying times by sensing the dryness of the load. When your dryer senses that the clothes have dried to the dryness level you have selected, the dryer will automatically turn itself off.

Using your dryer

- 1 Clean the lint filter before every load.
- 2 Load the clothes into the dryer.
- 3 Press POWER.
- 4 Select the dryness level.
- 5 Select the temperature setting and other drying options.
- 6 Press START/PAUSE.

The dryer will beep 5 times at the end of the cycle.

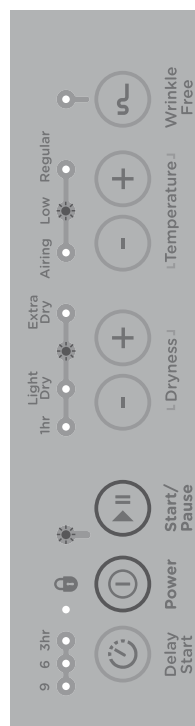


Fig. 15 Control panel – AeroSense™ dryer

Dryness levels

The AeroSense™ dryer has 5 dryness levels from Light Dry through to Extra Dry. Choose the dryness level to suit your load using the guide opposite. If you find the load is not dry enough, select the next dryness level up. The higher the level, the longer the drying time and the drier your clothes will be. Two lights are sometimes used to show the dryness level. For example the Light-Medium Dry and Medium-Extra Dry settings.

Airing / Cool down

When the dryer has sensed that the load is dry it will automatically go into a 10 minute airing or cool down cycle. During airing the drum tumbles and cool air is blown through the clothes. This reduces creasing if the clothes are left in the dryer.

AeroSense™ dryer 14

1 hour setting

The 1 hour setting is a manual cycle which dries continuously for 60 minutes. The manual cycle does not sense when your clothes are dry.

You can use the 1 hour setting when using a drying rack to dry shoes, hats and other items that are best dried without tumbling.

Note: it is important to check the clothes throughout the manual cycle to avoid overdrying.

Key Lock

Setting Key Lock prevents the dryer from being accidentally switched off, or the programme being altered when the dryer is running.

- 1 Select drying cycle and press START/PAUSE.
 - 2 Press KEY LOCK (the lock shaped button) and hold for 2 seconds.
 - 3 The Key Lock light will flash and the dryer will give 2 quick beeps.
 - 4 The Key Lock light will remain on and all other keys will now be locked.
- To remove the key lock repeat steps 2 and 3.

Pausing the dryer

Opening the door or pressing START/PAUSE will stop the dryer tumbling. To start again close the door and press START/PAUSE.

In the event of a power failure, your dryer will NOT restart automatically when power resumes. We recommend restarting the dryer as soon as the power comes back on.

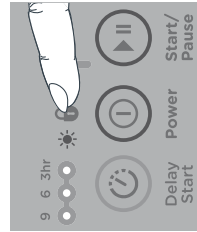
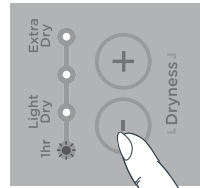
Important!

If you wish to stop the dryer before the cycle is finished, you MUST remove the clothes IMMEDIATELY and spread them out to cool. DO NOT leave the clothes in the dryer or bunched up in a clothes basket.

Note: If the door is opened when the dryer is running, and left open for more than 8 minutes, or the door is opened during Airing the dryer will automatically switch off.

Drum reversal

To minimise tangling and to ensure your clothes dry efficiently, the dryer reverses the tumbling during the cycle.



AeroSense™ dryer 15

Temperature settings

This dryer has 3 temperature settings: Regular, Low and Airing.

- The Regular setting is for drying most fabrics.
- The Low setting is for drying delicates and synthetics. It outputs half the amount of heat compared to the regular setting, so the temperatures are lower for maximum care of the fabrics.
- The Airing setting is a cycle designed to freshen up garments. The airing setting operates only on the 1 hour manual cycle.

The Regular and Low settings will operate on both the manual and the auto-sensing cycles.

Delay start

DELAY START will delay the start of the drying cycle by 3, 6 or 9 hours.

- 1 Select drying cycle.
- 2 Press DELAY START once for a delay of 3 hours. Press again for 6 hours, a third time for 9 hours and again to return to normal.

Selecting DELAY START will cancel the 'beeping' at the end of the cycle.

Note: the DELAY START will not operate when the 1 hour manual cycle is selected.

Important!

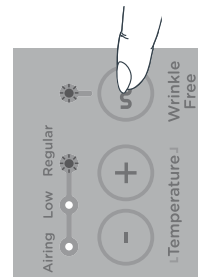
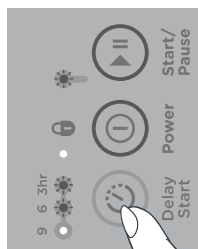
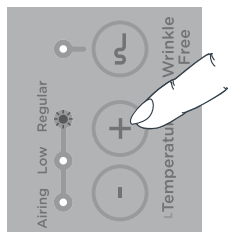
Do not leave non-colourfast materials to sit wet in the dryer as the dye may run.

Wrinkle free

Use WRINKLE FREE to minimise the creasing that occurs when the clothes are left to sit in the dryer.

At the end of the cycle the drum will rotate briefly every 5 minutes while cool air is blown through the clothes. WRINKLE FREE will continue for 12 hours or until the dryer is turned off. The dryer will beep to remind you that the cycle is finished.

WRINKLE FREE can be turned on or off at any time during the cycle.



16 AeroLogic™ and AeroDry™ dryers

Your AeroLogic™ or AeroDry™ dryer has been designed so you can select how long you want the clothes to dry for. So you know exactly when your clothes will be ready.

Using your dryer

- 1 Clean the lint filter before every load.
- 2 Load the clothes into the dryer and close the door.
- 3 Turning the dial clockwise, select the desired cycle and drying time. Push the dial in to start your chosen cycle.
- 4 Try to remove the clothes from the dryer as soon as the cycle is completed to help prevent creasing.

Note: the AeroDry™ dryer will stop every 5-6 minutes during operation to allow clothes to redistribute.

To pause/stop the dryer at anytime, pull the door open. To restart, close the door and push the dial in.

In the event of a power failure, your dryer will not restart automatically when power resumes. We recommend restarting the dryer as soon as the power comes back on.

Important!

If you wish to stop the dryer before the cycle is finished, you MUST remove the clothes IMMEDIATELY and spread them out to cool. DO NOT leave the clothes in the dryer, or bunched up in a clothes basket.

Drying cycles

Your AeroLogic™ or AeroDry™ dryer has two drying cycles designed to take care of all your drying needs.

- The REGULAR cycle is for drying more durable fabric or garment types, eg cotton, denim. Here the heater remains on until the airing phase of the cycle.
- The DELICATE cycle is for drying delicates and synthetics. Here the heater pulses on and off, so garments are dried at lower temperatures.

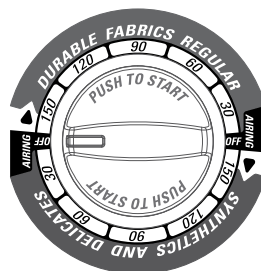


Fig. 16 Control panel – AeroLogic™ and AeroDry™ dryers

Note: turn the dial clockwise only.

AeroLogic™ and AeroDry™ dryers 17

Airing / Cool down

When the dryer has finished drying it will automatically go into a 12 minute airing or cool down cycle. During airing the drum tumbles and cool air is blown through the clothes. This reduces creasing if the clothes are left in the dryer.

This phase of the drying cycle can be used to air clothes.

Drying times

With your new dryer it may take a few trials before you can accurately predict the correct drying time for each individual load.

As a guide we have included some examples of loads and drying times. These times are approximate only, based on the garments being spun at the maximum spin speed suitable for the wash load.

Load comparison	Approximate drying times
7 towels	60 – 80 mins
10 shirts (cotton/polyester)	20 – 40 mins
4 t-shirts plus 5 towels	60 – 80 mins
9 small delicates	20 – 30 mins

Drying rack

AeroSense™ and AeroLogic™ dryers only

A drying rack is available to dry shoes, hats and other items that are best dried without tumbling.

How to use the drying rack

- 1 Place the locating pin at the end of the drying rack into the hole in the centre of the rear of the dryer drum.
- 2 Adjust the rack so that it is flat.
- 3 For the AeroSense™ dryer we recommend using the 1 hour manual cycle, and the low temperature setting (fully featured models).
For the AeroLogic™ dryer we recommend using the Delicate cycle.

Important!

Check the articles throughout the cycle to avoid overdrying.

Note: the drying rack (Part No. 427899) is an optional extra and not available in all countries.

18 Operating problems

If your dryer is not operating properly use the checklist below to find the possible solution.

Pressing POWER or setting the timer does not turn the machine on.
Is the electrical cord plugged in?
Is the power switched on at the wall?
Is the door securely closed?
Is the dial pushed in?
Could your household power supply be at fault? Try plugging in another electrical appliance.
Make sure the timer is not in the OFF position.
Clothes are still damp.
Try selecting a higher dryness level.
Very small loads in the AeroSense™ dryer may under-dry. Increase the load size.
Pressing START/PAUSE does not start the AeroSense™ dryer.
Try pressing START/PAUSE again.
Has the KEY LOCK been set?
Dryer is taking a long time to dry.
Is the lint filter clean?
Is the airflow system free from obstruction?
The AeroSense™ dryer keeps stopping and starting.
Has WRINKLE FREE been turned on?
The AeroSense™ dryer is beeping and the pattern of lights is unfamiliar.
Turn the dryer off at the wall. Wait 15 seconds and turn it back on. Press POWER and restart dryer.

If the problem persists contact your Dealer or a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer (refer to page 20).

19 Manufacturer's Warranty

You automatically receive a 2 year Manufacturer's Warranty with the purchase of this Product covering parts and labour for servicing within the country of purchase.

Fisher & Paykel undertakes to:

Repair or, at its option, replace without cost to the owner either for material or labour any part of the Product, the serial number of which appears on the Product, which is found to be defective within TWO YEARS of the date of purchase.

Note: This Warranty is an extra benefit and does not affect your legal rights.

This Warranty DOES NOT cover

A Service calls which are not related to any defect in the Product. The cost of a service call will be charged if the problem is found not to be a Product fault. For example:

1. Correcting the installation of the Product.
2. Instructing you how to use the Product.
3. Replacing house fuses or correcting house wiring or plumbing.
4. Correcting fault(s) caused by the user.
5. Noise or vibration that is considered normal, eg drain/fan sounds, refrigeration noises or user warning beeps.
6. Correcting damage caused by pests, eg rats, cockroaches, etc.
7. Poor drying performance due to incorrect installation eg no venting system fitted, dryer vent against a wall, blocked lint filter.
8. Poor drying performance due to incorrect loading, eg overloading or underloading.
9. Damage from articles in the drum, eg bra wires, pens, crayons, dye transfer or flammable material.
10. Dryer not heating due to timer dial being turned anticlockwise.

B Defects caused by factors other than:

1. Normal domestic use or
2. Use in accordance with the Product's User Guide.

C Defects to the Product caused by accident, neglect, misuse or Act of God.

D The cost of repairs carried out by non-authorised repairers or the cost of correcting such unauthorised repairs.

E Normal recommended maintenance as set out in the Product's User Guide.

F Repairs when the appliance has been dismantled, repaired or serviced by other than a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer or the selling dealer.

G Pick-up and delivery.

H Transportation or travel costs involved in the repair when the Product is installed outside the Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer's normal service area.

This Product has been designed for use in a normal domestic (residential) environment. This Product is not designed for commercial use (whatsoever). Any commercial use by a Customer will affect this Product's Warranty.

Service under this Manufacturer's Warranty must be provided by a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer (refer to the 'Customer Care' section at the back of this book). Such service shall be provided during normal business hours. This Warranty certificate should be shown when making any claim.

For Australian Customers

This Warranty is an extra benefit and does not affect your legal rights. Our goods come with guarantees that cannot be excluded under the Australian Consumer Law. You are entitled to a replacement or refund for a major failure and for compensation for any other reasonably foreseeable loss or damage. You are also entitled to have the goods repaired or replaced if the goods fail to be of acceptable quality and the failure does not amount to a major failure.

Please keep this User Guide in a safe place.

20 Customer Care

Before you call for service or assistance...

Check the things you can do yourself.
Refer to your User Guide and check:

- 1 Your appliance is correctly installed.
- 2 You are familiar with its normal operation.
- 3 You have read the problem solving at the back of the book.

If after checking these points you still need assistance, please refer to your nearest Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer, or contact us through our local website listed on the back cover.

In New Zealand if you need assistance...*

Call your Fisher & Paykel retailer who is trained to provide information on your appliance, or if we can be of any further help, please contact our Customer Care Centre,

Toll Free: 0800 FP CARE or 0800 37 2273 **Fax:** (09) 273 0656

Email: customer.care@fp.co.nz

Postal address: PO Box 58732, Botany, Manukau 2163

If you need service...*

Fisher & Paykel has a network of independent Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairers whose fully trained technicians can carry out any service necessary on your appliance. Your dealer or our Customer Care Centre can recommend a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer in your area.

In Australia if you need assistance...*

Call the Fisher & Paykel Customer Care Centre and talk to one of our Customer Care Consultants.

Toll Free: 1 300 650 590

Email: customer.care@fp.com.au

Fax: (07) 3826 9298

Postal address: PO Box 798, Cleveland, QLD 4163

If you need service...*

Fisher & Paykel has a network of qualified Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairers responsible for servicing only Fisher & Paykel branded appliances. Our Customer Care Centre can recommend a qualified Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer in your area.

In Asia or the Middle East if you need assistance...*

Please call our Fisher & Paykel Service line.

Phone: 6741 0777 **Fax:** 6547 0123

Phone: 6547 0100

Email: customerservice@fisherpaykel.com.sg Sunlight Building #03-01A, Singapore 408825

*If you call or write, please provide: name, address, model number, serial number, date of purchase and a description of the problem. This information is needed in order to better respond to your request for assistance.

Product details can be found on a sticker situated on the back of the dryer cabinet, or on the inside of the dryer door.



Customer Care 21

Product details

Fisher & Paykel Appliances, Ltd.

Model/Serial No.

Date of Purchase _____ Purchaser _____

Dealer _____ Suburb _____

Town _____ Country _____

www.fisherpaykel.co.nz
www.fisherpaykel.com.au
www.fisherpaykel.com.sg

Fisher & Paykel

Copyright © Fisher & Paykel 2011. All rights reserved.
The product specifications in this booklet apply to the specific products and models described at the date of issue. Under our policy of continuous product improvement, these specifications may change at any time. You should therefore check with your Dealer to ensure this booklet correctly describes the product currently available.

F&P PN - 427929 B

11.2011

NZ AU SG HK IN ME

Fisher & Paykel

AquaSmart 2™ clothes washer

**Installation instructions
and User guide**

NZ AU

Contents

Installation instructions	3
Before you do your first wash	7
The unique AquaSmart 2™ wash	8
Sorting and loading	9
Detergent	11
Fabric softener	12
AquaSmart 2™ safety features	13
Wash cycles	14
Getting started quickly	18
Before you start	20
AquaSmart 2™ controls	22
Choosing your wash cycle	23
Changing the wash cycle options	27
Lifestyle cycles	31
Clean Me cycle	32
Settings menu	36
Caring for your AquaSmart 2™ washer	38
Before you call for service	40
Solving operating problems	42
Solving wash problems	43
Manufacturer's Warranty	45
Customer Care	

Important!

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

The models shown in this User Guide may not be available in all markets and are subject to change at any time. For current details about model and specification availability in your country, please visit our local website listed on the back cover or contact your local Fisher & Paykel dealer.

2 Introduction

Welcome to AquaSmart 2™

Thank you for buying a Fisher & Paykel AquaSmart 2™ clothes washer. We are very proud of this washer and trust it will serve you well for many years.

At Fisher & Paykel we aim to provide innovative products that are simple to use, ergonomic and kind to the environment. Thousands of tonnes of washing and 75 years of laundry experience have been programmed into your clothes washer to help give you the best possible performance.

Your AquaSmart 2™ clothes washer works differently from a conventional washer. It is a "High Efficiency" machine utilising innovative technology to wash in less water and take great care of your clothes. Similarly, taking extra care in the way you use your high efficiency washer will help ensure you make the most of its capabilities.

The revolutionary, super water efficient wash action of your AquaSmart 2™ washer means that it is no longer necessary to wash using a full bowl of water. This innovative wash action relies on maintaining a small volume of water to ensure the best wash results. Please be aware that the water level for this washer is fully automatic, with the machine's 'smarts' choosing the appropriate water volume for you. This means that there is no option to manually select your water level.

Please take the time to read these instructions carefully before you begin using your machine. Like all High Efficiency washers, a little extra care in how you sort your clothes (particularly in terms of their fabric type, colour and how soiled they are) and in choosing your cycle and detergent type, will ensure that you get the best possible wash result.

We hope you enjoy your new washer. We have certainly enjoyed designing it for you.

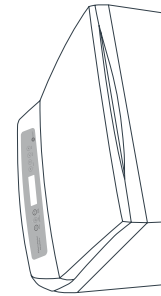


Fig. 1 AquaSmart 2™

Installation instructions 3

Unpacking

To ensure the best performance from your new AquaSmart 2™ clothes washer please follow the instructions below.

Removing the packaging

- 1 Remove the outer packaging.
- 2 Tilt the machine backwards and walk it off the bottom packer one foot at a time.
- 3 Remove the bottom packer from under the machine by pulling it out the front.
- 4 Lift the lid and remove the bowl packer from the bowl.
- 5 Remove the hoses and accessories.
- 6 Keep the bottom packer and bowl packer in case they are required for future transit.

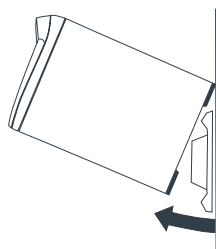


Fig.2 Tilt washer backwards to remove packer

Important!

Ensure that the bottom packer has been removed before operating your machine.

Installation

Your washer must be installed on a level surface, and not on any textured floor coverings (eg carpet, rugs) to ensure that the opening at the bottom of the machine is not obstructed.

In your clothes washer you will find:

- 4 rubber inserts for the levelling feet (joined together).
- 1 hose guide.
- 2 inlet hoses.

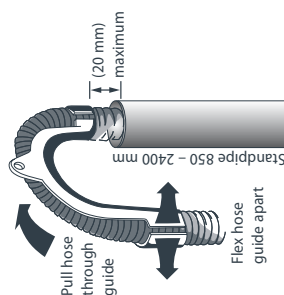


Fig.3 Fitting the drain hose guide

Drain hose

- 1 Carefully pull the drain hose out from the back of the machine by pulling the exposed part of the hose downwards and outwards.
- 2 To guide the drain hose over the tub or standpipe the hose guide MUST be fitted to the drain hose.

Important!

To prevent siphoning the drain hose should not extend more than 20 mm from the end of the guide. The height of the standpipe or tub should be between 850 – 2400 mm. The drain hose can be trimmed to length.

- 3 Place the drain hose in the tub or standpipe.

Draining

- Regularly check that your standpipe or tub is free from lint or other obstructions which may affect how your machine works or may cause flooding.
- In multi-storey apartments, or any upper floor, the machine should be installed on a floor that is equipped with a drain.
- Draining must comply with local by-laws.

Installation instructions 4

Water supply

- This clothes washer should be plumbed into both a hot and cold water supply otherwise some cycles may not function correctly.
- Your hot water should not exceed 65°C, and your cold water should not exceed 35°C.
- Temperatures above these may cause a fault or cause damage to the machine.
- If you have an uncontrolled water-heating source (eg a wet back or solar heating) you should have a tempering device fitted. This will ensure the hot water temperature remains within safe limits. For the most suitable type of tempering device we recommend you contact a local plumber or plumbing supply merchant.
- Inlet Water Static Pressure of between 3 psi (20 kPa) and 150 psi (1 MPa) is required. (If using a header tank then the top of the header tank must be at least 2 metres above the top of your clothes washer).
- Minimum flow rate from the tap supplying the clothes washer should be greater than 6 litres/min (assumes 12.7 mm (1/2 inch) diameter pipes).
- Minimum height of taps to clear the top of the machine is 1150 mm.

Inlet hoses

- Note:
- New hose sets provided with the washer shall be used to connect the washer to the water mains.
 - Old hose sets should not be re-used.

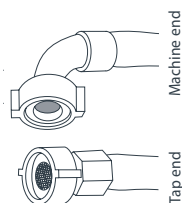


Fig.4 Inlet hose ends

- 1 Connect the straight ends of the inlet hoses to the taps (there are washers fitted in both ends). Connect the red connector hose to hot, and white connector hose to cold (if your hoses are colour-coded).
- 2 Connect the elbow ends of the inlet hoses to the machine inlet valves. Inlet valves are marked on the back of the machine. Ensure the hot valve is connected to the hot tap and the cold valve is connected to the cold tap.

H = Hot
C = Cold

Inlet hose replacement

We recommend replacing the inlet hoses every 5 years. Hoses should be checked from time to time and replaced if any wear, cuts, bulges, kinks or leaks are found.

Electrical

This appliance must be supplied with a 230 V – 240 V, 50 Hz, sinusoidal, 450 W electrical supply.

Installation instructions 5

Levelling your machine

It is **IMPORTANT** to level the machine to ensure good spin performance and effective detergent and fabric softener dispensing.

- 1 Separate the 4 rubber foot inserts from the moulding and fit into the feet on the base of the machine.
- 2 Move the machine to its final position (we suggest a minimum clearance of 20 mm each side).
- 3 Adjust the feet (wind down) so the machine does not sit on the corner cabinets (these must be clear of the floor). Adjust so that the machine is level and does not rock.
- 4 To check levelling, open the lid.
- 5 At the front of the machine, slide the end of a tape measure between the topdeck and the neck ring, until it touches the inside front of the main cabinet (Fig.6). Accurately measure the distance from the inside of the cabinet to the inner most edge of the neck ring.
- 6 If the machine is correctly level, this distance is:
90 ± 2 mm (600 mm wide, 7 kg capacity machine)
95 ± 2 mm (650 mm wide, 8 kg capacity machine)
- 7 Repeat process for the left side of the machine (Fig.7). Ensure you measure the correct distance for the size of machine you have.
- 8 If the measurement is incorrect, adjust the feet (by winding them up and/or down) until you achieve the correct measurement at both locations. Ensure after every adjustment that the machine does not rock.
- 9 Turn on the water and check all hose connections for leaks. Make sure there are no kinks in the hoses.
- 10 Uncoil power cord, remove and discard the plastic pin cover, and plug into wall socket.

Note:
Measurements for the different models:
90 ± 2 (600 mm wide, 7 kg capacity machine)
95 ± 2 (650 mm wide, 8 kg capacity machine)
Ensure you measure correctly for the size of machine you have.

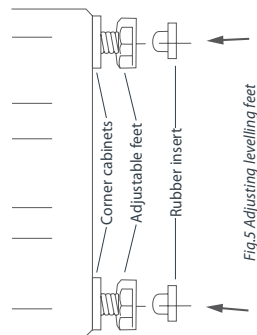


Fig.5 Adjusting levelling feet

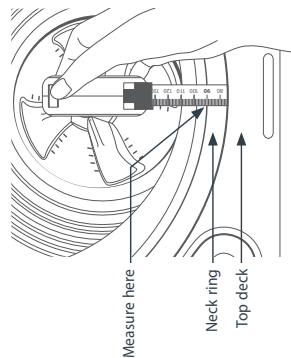


Fig.6 Measure at the front of the machine

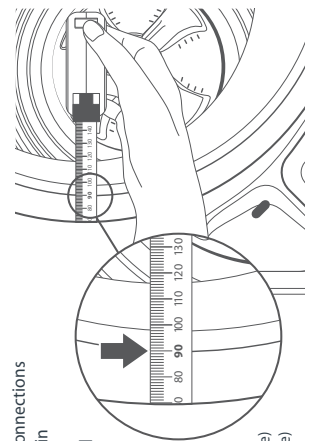


Fig.7 Measure at the left side of the machine

Installation instructions 6

Clothes washer safety

- This clothes washer is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety.
- Your AquaSmart 2™ can only be opened during the initial fill stage. Once the fill is complete, the lid will be locked for safety reasons.
- Supervise children at all times to ensure they do not play with the washer.

Important!

If you are using an extension cord or a portable electrical outlet device (eg multi-socket outlet box), ensure that it is positioned so that it does not come into contact with water or moisture.

Accessories and spare parts

Available from your Fisher & Paykel Dealer or a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer.

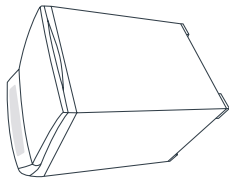
- Hose Inlet Long (2 m) – Part No. 422680P
- Hose Inlet Large Bore – Part No. 426123P
- Drain Hose Extension – Part No. 425627P
- Power Cord – If the power cord of your clothes washer is damaged it must be replaced by a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer in order to avoid a hazard, as it is not a standard power cord.

Before you do your first wash

You owe it to yourself and your AquaSmart 2™ to have it installed correctly by a technician from a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer.

Before you start, it is a good idea to go through the following checklist:

- 1 Has the basepacker been removed?
- 2 Is the hot hose connected to the hot valve marked 'H'?
- 3 Is the cold hose connected to the cold valve marked 'C'?
- 4 Is the drain hose threaded through the 'U bend' hose guide (with no more than 20 mm extended) and onto your standpipe? Are the rubber inserts secured into the feet on the base of your machine, the machine levelled, and corner cabinets clear of the floor? Refer to 'Installation instructions', page 5.



AquaSmart 2™ water consumption

Load Size	8 kg capacity models		7 kg capacity models	
	Regular	High Efficiency*	Regular	High Efficiency*
8 kg capacity	82 L	165 L	72 L	159 L
7 kg capacity	69 L	147 L	66 L	141 L
5 kg	60 L	123 L	60 L	117 L
3 kg	54 L	88 L	52 L	77 L

*Consumption measured with Softener option off.

Regular, High Efficiency, with the Softener option off is the recommended water saving cycle for normally soiled, everyday washing.

AquaSmart 2™ capacity

AquaSmart 2™ offers a generous 7 kg or 8 kg capacity. The list below outlines what is included in a 7 kg or 8 kg wash load (in accordance with AS/NZS 2040.1:2005).

8 kg Load		7 kg Load	
3 Sheets (double)	5 Pillowcases	2 Sheets (double)	4 Pillowcases
4 Bath towels	5 Shorts	6 Bath towels	7 Shorts
3 Tablecloths	8 Wash cloths	2 Tablecloths	6 Wash cloths
5 Shirts	6 Handkerchiefs	3 Shirts	4 Handkerchiefs
5 T-shirts		4 T-shirts	

Note: the above load compositions are indicative only. We recommend for everyday use that you separate out your sheets and wash them on the specially designed SHEETS cycle.

The unique AquaSmart 2™ wash

The AquaSmart 2™ washer has two modes of washing, **High Efficiency** and **Conventional**. Both modes start the same way, with a Detergent Activating wash.

Detergent Activating wash

AquaSmart 2™ fills the bowl at the selected water temperature, with just enough water so the clothes are saturated. This small amount of sudsy water flows through the clothes, up a specially designed portal and back onto the clothes in a waterfall effect. This thoroughly dissolves and activates the detergent.

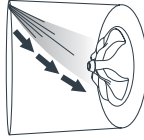


Fig.8 Detergent Activating wash

High Efficiency mode

In the High Efficiency mode the AquaSmart 2™ then fills with just enough cool water to lift the clothes off the low-profile agitator so when it rotates, the clothes gently roll over each other. This wash gives you the benefit of water savings, using similar quantities of water to most front loaders.

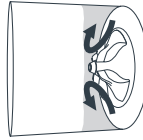


Fig.9 High Efficiency wash

Conventional mode

The Conventional mode is the immersion wash all top-load washer users are familiar with. However, this mode still uses less water than that of other top loaders which utilise the immersion wash. After the Detergent Activating wash the AquaSmart 2™ fills with cold water until the clothes are submerged, and gently turns the clothes over. We recommend this mode when the dilution effect of water can solve or prevent common wash problems. For example, when dye or colour run can be a problem (ie new, dark-coloured garments), or when washing sandy towels. The SHEETS cycle uses the Conventional mode.

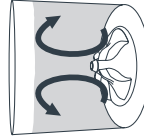


Fig.10 Conventional wash

Some cycles can be used in both modes, whilst others work in only one.

	High Efficiency	Conventional
Regular	✓	✓
Heavy Duty	✓	✓
Sheets	–	✓
Delicate	✓	✓
Easy Iron	–	✓
Colours	–	✓
Whites	✓	✓
Bulky	–	✓

These two wash modes mean that your AquaSmart 2™ washer gives you the best of both worlds, to suit any laundry situation.

Sorting and loading 9

When sorting your wash load and loading your *AquaSmart 2™* there are some important things to consider:

Sorting

- Care labels provide valuable information about the fabric type and how the garment should be washed.
- Sort items according to what they are soiled with – some soils, like mud and blood are best washed in cold water. Oily soils (eg some foods and marks on shirt collars) are best washed in warm water.
- Always separate coloured items from whites, especially when they are new.
- Some items are lint givers (eg towels, nappies), while others are lint collectors (eg black trousers, synthetic socks). Always wash lint givers and collectors separately.

Lint Givers	Lint Collectors
Towels	Synthetics
Chenille	Corduroy
Nappies	Polyester cottons

Before you load

- Check pockets for items that could damage your clothes or get caught in the washer.
- Close zippers, hooks and eyes, and other fastenings, and remove loose bra wires. All these can damage both your *AquaSmart 2™* and your clothes.
- Place delicate items, such as lingerie, in a mesh laundry bag.
- Pre-treat any stains taking care not to spray or wipe pre-treaters around and directly on your washer. These can damage the plastic surfaces.

Loading

- *AquaSmart 2™* is more efficient when washing larger loads. So try to wash larger loads – without packing clothes too tightly into the wash bowl. Wait till you have at least 4 or 5 items before you do a wash.
- Always separate out your sheets and wash them on their own using the specifically designed SHEET5 cycle. Your sheets will wash better and last longer this way.
- Never wrap items around the low-profile agitator like a snake. Instead, place them in as loose parcels, ie try not to arrange items around the wash bowl, just drop them straight in. This will help prevent tangling and out of balance issues.

Important!

- *Please do not under any circumstances wash an electric blanket in your AquaSmart 2™ washer. It is not recommended that you wash curtains in your AquaSmart 2™. Sunlight makes them brittle and they may disintegrate during washing.*

Sorting and loading 10

You may notice that your *AquaSmart 2™* clothes washer behaves differently from your previous washer. Your *AquaSmart 2™* like all High Efficiency washers, has fully automatic water level selection. This means that, like front loaders, the selection of the water level is left entirely up to the washer. This ensures optimum wash performance and water savings. Should you wish to use more water, simply select a Conventional cycle (refer to 'Conventional mode', page 8).

Sorting and loading explained

Your *AquaSmart 2™*, like front loading machines, uses much less water and energy than traditional top loading clothes washers. It is important that you sort your wash load to ensure optimum wash performance.

SHEETS – Separate out sheets and duvet covers and use the SHEETS cycle which has been especially designed for these items. Ensure that duvet/duona covers are buttoned or zipped up. To get the best possible wash for sheets, load these items as 'parcels' toward the outer edge of the bowl rather than directly across the low-profile agitator.

COLOURED ITEMS – Dye or colour run can be a problem with High Efficiency washers, so separate highly coloured garments especially when they are new and have not been washed many times. Choose the COLOURS cycle. Most dye transfer occurs when clothes are left too long in the machine at the completion of the cycle so try not to leave your coloured clothes lingering in the machine.

BULKY ITEMS – Duvets/duonas, sleeping bags, ski jackets/blankets and throws are all items which tend to behave unusually in a clothes washer. The lighter ones tend to float, while a large blanket can get very heavy and make spinning difficult. Your *AquaSmart 2™* has a specific BULKY cycle option designed to take care of these washing challenges.

CREASABLES – When you are concerned about creasing or wrinkling we recommend you use the EASY IRON cycle. Alternatively, select one of the Conventional cycles. The extra water used by these cycles will help to reduce creasing. Reducing the spin speed of the wash may also help (refer to page 25).

JEANS – These heavy items can be responsible for damaging other items in the wash and require special attention when it comes to washing them. We feel that they should be washed separately using the COLOURS cycle or the JEANS cycle.
Hint: turn your jeans inside-out before washing to help maintain their appearance.

SOIL – Very dirty, sandy or linty loads are best washed separately to prevent transfer onto other garments. It may be that you have new towels that create lots of lint or very sandy beach gear. We suggest using a Conventional cycle in this circumstance or the fabric softener rinse as this will give an extra deep rinse (ie ensure the SOFTENER option is ON).
Note: there is no need to add fabric softener to the dispenser in this instance (refer to page 25).

DELICATES – To take extra special care of delicate items, we suggest using the DELICATE cycle. A HANDWASH cycle is also available (refer to page 28).

Choosing the right detergent

Your AquaSmart 2™ is a High Efficiency clothes washer and needs a Low Sudsing Detergent to prevent oversudsing problems. This is the same type of detergent Front Loaders use and is labelled, "Low Suds", "Matic", "High Efficiency" or "HE".

We recommend the use of liquid detergents for best results. This is particularly important when washing dark garments.

When washing woollens use a wool detergent but use it sparingly as these are usually very high foaming. Do not use soap flakes or granulated soap powders.

How much detergent?

Use the instructions stated on the detergent label as a guide to the correct amount to use. The correct amount of detergent will vary depending on the amount of soil in your clothes and the size of your load. Jeans and work clothes may need more and towels less.

- If you have over-foaming problems reduce your dosage.
- If your clothes are not clean enough, try using a bit more.

Where do I put my detergent?

Pour your detergent into the detergent dispenser, located on the left side of the washer.

We recommend that you measure your detergent first.

You will notice that most of the detergent placed in the dispenser will fall into the machine. It will remain in an area separated from your clothes until the machine begins to fill. As the washer fills, the dispenser will be flushed of any residue. The detergent is then mixed with water, and specially designed ribs at the bottom of the bowl help to rapidly dissolve the detergent to ensure optimum wash performance.

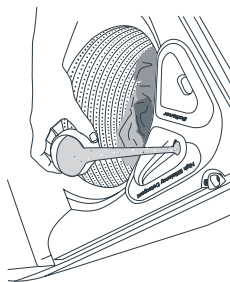


Fig. 11 Adding detergent to the detergent dispenser

Choosing the right cycle

If you wish to use fabric softener you will need to select the SOFTENER option which will give you a deep rinse. If the softener option is not selected, the softener will not be dispensed.

For instructions on selecting the SOFTENER option please refer to pages 19 and 25.

Note: the SOFTENER option is defaulted to ON for all cycles. This does not require that you use fabric softener every wash, only when you wish to.

Adding the fabric softener

Measure the softener out into the cap and pour into the fabric softener dispenser. The softener will remain in the top of the dispenser until the deep rinse where water flushes it into the bowl. Note: if you fill beyond the MAX mark, the overflow will pour fabric softener into the bowl prematurely and contribute to scrud (described below).



Fig. 12 Adding softener into the fabric softener dispenser

Cleaning the dispenser

The funnel of the fabric softener dispenser (the top) clicks off easily. Simply place a finger down the centre and lift. The remaining siphon tube and fabric softener well is not removable and needs to be cleaned with hot water and an old toothbrush periodically. If the siphon tube looks partially blocked use a cotton bud to clean.

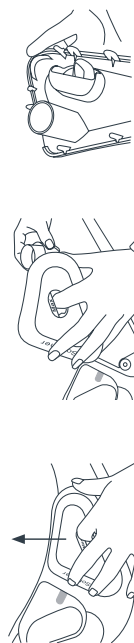


Fig. 13 Removing the fabric softener funnel

Scrud

Scrud is the name of the waxy build-up that can occur within any washer when fabric softener comes into contact with detergent. This build-up is not brought about by a fault in the machine. If scrud is allowed to build up in the machine it can result in stains on clothes or an unpleasant smell in your washer. Scrud can be kept under control by using the CLEAN ME cycle regularly.

If you wish to use fabric softener we recommend to:

- Use it sparingly. Measure it carefully to ensure you do not fill above the MAX level.
- Clean the dispenser as soon as the cycle has finished.
- Clean your machine regularly using the CLEAN ME cycle (see page 36).
- Cold water washing increases the chance of this build-up occurring. We recommend a warm or hot wash at regular intervals, eg every 5th wash.

AquaSmart 2™ safety features 13

Auto drain

- Unsupervised clothes washers filled with water can present a drowning hazard to small children. In order to minimise any risk of this type of accident, your AquaSmart 2™ has been pre-programmed to know when this potential hazard is created and drain the wash water to a safe level.
- If you pause your AquaSmart 2™ at any time during the wash cycle when there is water in the bowl, the machine will activate the AUTO DRAIN function after 3 minutes. This will drain the water in the wash bowl to an acceptable level, removing any potential hazard.
- A warning message will be displayed to warn you prior to AUTO DRAIN being activated.

Lid lock

Your AquaSmart 2™ washer is able to lock its lid during hazardous parts of the wash cycle to provide extra safety for you and your family while it is operating.

The Lid lock symbol () appears in the top right hand corner of the screen, letting you know at a glance if you can open the lid or not.

To unlock the lid at any time press START/PAUSE.

The lid will be unlocked during the initial phase of the wash. This will enable you to pre-dissolve detergent and add or remove clothing before the wash begins.

If the lid is left open, your AquaSmart 2™ washer will be unable to lock the lid, and the cycle will be halted. The machine will beep to alert you, and will display a message on the screen. If this occurs, ensure that the lid is closed and press START/PAUSE.

Important!




Do not put anything down the Lid lock slot in the top deck.
Do not try to disable the Lid lock.

Ensure that children or infirmed persons are well supervised when around your AquaSmart 2™ washer, especially when you are using hot water, as the lid can be opened during the fill portion of the cycle.

14 Wash cycles


Your AquaSmart 2™ washer has a number of wash cycles to suit your laundering needs. Selecting the most appropriate cycle for each particular wash load will help ensure you get the best possible wash result.


Wash cycles explained

	Regular – High Efficiency mode For normally soiled everyday cotton loads, eg towels, t-shirts, shorts, shirts.	
	Regular – High Efficiency mode OFF For everyday loads where extra water is an advantage. For example when the load is linty, sandy, or dye run is possible.	High Efficiency OFF
Regular		
Wash time	12 – 15 mins	12 – 15 mins
Wash action	Regular High Efficiency	Regular Conventional
Wash temp	Warm/Cold	Warm/Cold
Rinse sequence	Aqua Rinse (spray)	Spray/Deep
Spin	Fast (1000 rpm)	Fast (1000 rpm)
	Heavy – High Efficiency mode Recommended cycle for heavily soiled durable garments, eg tea towels, rugby shorts, children's clothes.	
	Heavy – High Efficiency mode OFF For heavily soiled durable garments when you want to use more water.	High Efficiency OFF
Heavy		
Wash time	15 mins	15 mins
Wash action	Heavy High Efficiency	Heavy Conventional
Wash temp	Warm	Warm
Rinse sequence	Aqua Rinse (spray)	Spray/Deep
Spin	Fast (1000 rpm)	Fast (1000 rpm)
	Sheets – High Efficiency mode Unavailable.	
	Sheets – High Efficiency mode OFF Recommended cycle for sheets, tablecloths, doonas/duvet covers.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
Sheets		
Wash time	n/a	15 – 17 mins
Wash action		Sheets Conventional
Wash temp		Warm
Rinse sequence		Spray/Deep
Spin		Fast (1000 rpm)

16 Wash cycles

Wash cycles explained

	Whites – High Efficiency mode A higher temperature wash to keep white garments looking white.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
	Whites – High Efficiency mode OFF When you want to use more water when washing white garments.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
Wash time	12 – 15 mins	12 – 15 mins
Wash action	Regular High Efficiency	Regular Conventional
Wash temp	Warm/Hot	Warm/Hot
Rinse sequence	Aqua Rinse (spray)	Spray/Deep
Spin	Fast (1000 rpm)	Fast (1000 rpm)

	Bulky – High Efficiency mode Unavailable.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
	Bulky – High Efficiency mode Off Recommended cycle for washing bulky items.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
Wash time	n/a	6 mins + soak
Wash action		Bulky Conventional
Wash temp		Warm
Rinse sequence		Double Deep
Spin		Slow (300 rpm)

The BULKY cycle takes special care of bulky items. Bulky garments and bedding wash most effectively when they can move freely. Ensure that there is sufficient room in the bowl for the load to move during the wash.


Some bulky items may float during the wash (eg duvets/duonas and pillows). If these items sit too high in the washer they may touch stationary parts during agitate or spin. To minimise the chance of this happening, ensure that bulky items are pushed as far down into the bowl as possible, prior to spin. The washer will alert you when it is time to do this. To continue the cycle simply press START/PAUSE.


When washing a single bulky item add a large beach towel to the wash, to ensure the load is balanced for an effective spin.


Note: once you have selected the BULKY cycle, you will be asked for more information about the bulky item you wish to wash (refer to page 17). This will allow your *AquaSmart 2™* to select the optimum wash action for your particular item.

15 Wash cycles

Wash cycles explained

	Delicate – High Efficiency mode For delicate or valuable lightly soiled clothes.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
	Delicate – High Efficiency mode OFF For when you want to wash your delicates in more water.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
Wash time	6 mins	6 mins
Wash action	Delicate High Efficiency	Delicate Conventional
Wash temp	Warm/Cold	Warm/Cold
Rinse sequence	Aqua Rinse (spray)	Spray/Deep
Spin	Slow (300 rpm)	Slow (300 rpm)

	Easy Iron – High Efficiency mode Unavailable.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
	Easy Iron – High Efficiency mode OFF Recommended cycle for minimising creasing.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
Wash time	n/a	12 mins
Wash action		Regular Conventional
Wash temp		Warm/Cold
Rinse sequence		Spray/Deep
Spin		Slow (300 rpm)


	Colours – High Efficiency mode Unavailable.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
	Colours – High Efficiency mode Off Recommended cycle for washing coloured items that may release dye during the wash.	High Efficiency OFF (Default mode)
Wash time	n/a	12 – 15 mins
Wash action		Regular Conventional
Wash temp		Cold
Rinse sequence		Spray/Deep
Spin		Fast (1000 rpm)

Wash cycles 17

Specific bulky wash options

	Duvet/Doona		Feather
	Blanket		Synthetic
	Throw		
	Jacket		
	Sleeping bag		

Please note: we recommend that you do not wash woolen duvet/doona inners, or any other item marked "dry clean only" in your AquaSmart 2™ washer.

	Rinse and Spin	Rinse and Spin – High Efficiency mode This cycle allows you to select a water efficient Rinse and Spin only.
		Rinse and Spin – High Efficiency mode OFF This cycle allows you to select Rinse and Spin only, using more water in the rinse for those situations that require it.

If you wish to change any of the wash options while your AquaSmart 2™ is running, press START/PAUSE then select the required option.

Getting started quickly 18

Before you start

- It is important to sort your clothes, particularly by colour (eg separate white/light colours from dark colours), as well as separating out sheets and washing them on the SHEETS cycle. Refer to page 9 for more details on sorting and loading.
- Wash new, highly coloured and dark coloured items separately to prevent dye transfer onto other items.
- Sort lint givers and lint collectors (refer to page 9).
- Close bra clasps, do up zippers and check pockets.
- Place your clothes directly into the wash bowl.
- Don't wrap sheets around the bowl like a snake, drop them in as loose parcels.

Detergent

- Although your AquaSmart 2™ is a top-loading machine, this High Efficiency washer has been designed for use with liquid **Low Sudsing**, 'HE' or 'Front Loader' type detergent.
- AquaSmart 2™ offers a detergent dispenser for your convenience, located on the front, left hand side of the top deck.
- For the correct detergent dose, please follow the manufacturer's directions, outlined on the detergent label.
- Pour the detergent down the detergent dispenser.
- For more information on detergent and fabric softener please refer to pages 11 – 12.

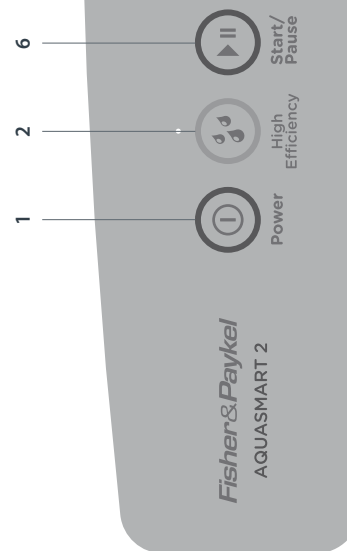


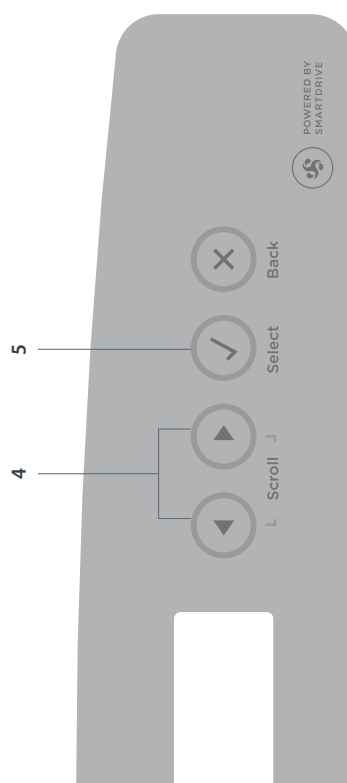
Fig. 14 AquaSmart 2™ control panel

Getting started quickly 19

Easy touch buttons and LCD screen

These buttons require only a gentle touch to activate.

- 1 Touch POWER to activate your AquaSmart 2™ washer.
 - 2 HIGH EFFICIENCY – this light tells you when 'High Efficiency' mode is selected. The button allows you to switch between High Efficiency and Conventional modes (refer to page 20).
 - 3 The screen in the middle of the panel will display the wash cycles available (refer to page 22).
 - 4 Use the SCROLL buttons to select the wash cycle that best suits your load (refer to page 22).
 - 5 Use the SELECT/TICK button to confirm your selection.
Choose your wash options. For example, if you wish to use fabric softener, ensure the SOFTENER option is ON (if not, scroll to SOFTENER and touch the SELECT button. Select SOFTENER ON). The SOFTENER option is a good idea when washing dark coloured items which are particularly soiled.
Note: you do not need to add fabric softener to the dispenser in this instance. For more information on wash options refer to pages 23 – 26.
 - 6 Touch START – Let AquaSmart 2™ do the rest for you. The washer will start to fill with water, and will automatically select the correct water level and wash action for your load. Constant interruptions to the cycle will increase the time taken to complete the cycle and may result in poorer wash performance.
- For best fabric and colour care, remove your clothes as soon as the cycle has finished.



Important!

Failure to follow the advice in this guide may result in damage to your garments, and your expectations of wash performance may not be met.

20 AquaSmart 2™ controls



Easy touch controls

These smooth, easy clean buttons require only a gentle touch to activate. To scroll you need to remove your finger to break contact and touch it again.

High Efficiency mode

This button activates or deactivates the HIGH EFFICIENCY mode. The light will be on when High Efficiency is selected (please refer to 'High Efficiency mode', page 8). To select CONVENTIONAL mode simply press the HIGH EFFICIENCY mode button and the light will turn off.

The High Efficiency symbol (a circle with a play/pause symbol) will appear on the screen when the mode is active.



Scroll
The SCROLL buttons allow you to scroll between the wash cycles, and the wash cycle options.



Select
Use the SELECT key to confirm your selected option and the BACK key to cancel and go back to the previous level in the menu.

AquaSmart 2™ controls 21

The display screen

The display screen allows you to view the available wash cycles and modify options. It provides feedback on what your AquaSmart 2™ washer is doing and how long the wash has to go, to keep you informed throughout the cycle. The screen will also display messages to help you with the overall running of your machine.



Time to go

Your AquaSmart 2™ washer will display how many minutes the wash cycle has to go, so that you can tell at a glance when your washing will be finished. Once AquaSmart 2™ has finished the filling and sensing process, the time remaining will be displayed. A progress bar is also displayed and will move along as the cycle progresses. Please be aware that the flow rate of your water supply may influence the cycle time.

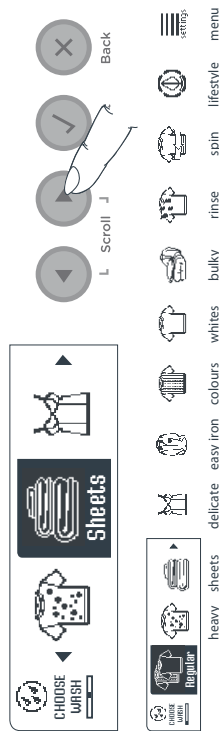
22 Choosing your wash cycle

Using the soft touch display

- When you turn your AquaSmart 2™ washer on, the main wash cycles will be displayed on the screen.



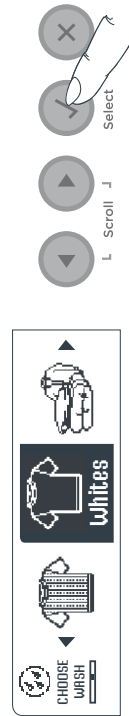
- To view all 10 wash cycles, the Lifestyle cycles and menu options, use the right arrow button to scroll along the menu (use the left arrow button to scroll back along the menu).



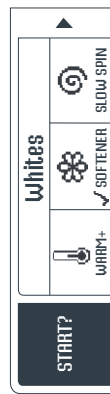
- To see the wash cycles explained in more detail please refer to pages 14 – 16.

To select a wash cycle

- To select a wash cycle scroll along until your selection is highlighted then touch the SELECT button. This will confirm your selection.



- The wash cycle options will then be displayed for your chosen cycle.

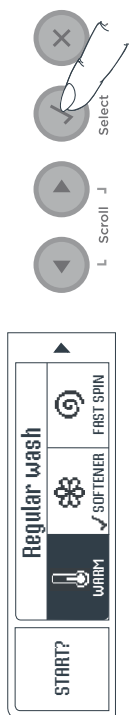


- Use the right arrow button to scroll through the available wash options.



Changing the wash cycle options 23

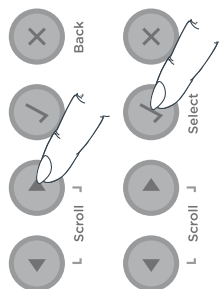
- 1 Select the wash option you wish to modify, highlight it by touching the SELECT button.



- 2 Choose your preferred setting and press SELECT.
eg wash temperature:



- 3 You will then be given the option whether to save the modification for future washes or to just use it for this one. If you select Yes, Save for Future Washes, the machine will save the changed wash option for that cycle only. Please note: this option is not available for the Delay Start, Drip Dry or Soak selections.
- 4 Press SELECT to confirm YES or NO.
- 5 You will then return to the main wash options screen.
- 6 Scroll using the left arrow button back to START? and touch START/PAUSE or SELECT to begin the wash.



Changing the wash cycle options 24

Wash cycle options explained

To alter any of the wash options explained below, please refer to pages 22 – 23 for instructions on changing the wash cycle options.



Temperature
AquaSmart 2™ offers five wash temperatures.

Cold Tap	Controlled Cold	Warm/Cold	Warm	Warm/Hot	Hot
Incoming water from tap	20°C	35°C	40°C	50°C	60°C

Using the SCROLL buttons, simply scroll to the left to decrease the wash temperature or to the right to increase wash temperature, then press SELECT/TICK to confirm your selection.

Note:

- The Temperature option selects the temperature of the first phase of the two-part wash system, known as the Detergent Activating Wash.
- Some temperatures are not available on some cycles for best clothes care (eg DELICATE cycle).

Hint: if a hot wash is required, where both phases of the wash system are hot, select SHEETS cycle and HOT temperature.

Changing the wash cycle options 25

Wash cycle options continued



Controlled Cold

The temperature of cold tap water varies widely, depending on your location and the season. The lower the cold water temperature, the less effective the cold wash becomes. To help with this issue we have developed CONTROLLED COLD which adds a small amount of warm water, when necessary, to raise your cold water wash to 20°C. This will ensure that you receive a more effective wash in cold water.



Fabric softener

If you wish to use fabric softener in your AquaSmart 2™ clothes washer, ensure SOFTENER ON is selected. If not, select the SOFTENER option from the Wash Options. Scroll to SOFTENER ON, and then press SELECT/TICK to confirm your selection. You will have the option to save this choice for future washes when using that cycle. This will adjust the rinse to dispense the fabric softener correctly. Selecting SOFTENER ON (thus giving a fabric softener rinse) is also a good idea when washing dark-coloured, moderately to highly soiled garments (you do not need to add fabric softener to the dispenser in this instance).

Note: the SOFTENER option set to ON is the default setting for all cycles.



Spin Speed

Your AquaSmart 2™ washer offers three spin speeds: Fast (1000 rpm), Medium (700 rpm) and Slow (300 rpm), plus an additional No Spin option. The DRIP DRY option can also be selected (refer to page 26). Simply increase or decrease your spin speed by scrolling left or right, and touch the SELECT button to confirm your selection.

Changing the wash cycle options

Wash cycle options continued



Delay Start

The Delay Start option delays the start of the wash cycle between 15 minutes and 18 hours. This can be useful to time your washing to finish when you arrive home from work, or to start once you have finished in the shower. Simply scroll right to increase the delay time, and left to decrease the time, or turn Delay Start off. Press the SELECT button to confirm your selection.

Note: we suggest that you avoid using Delay Start for damp, non-colourfast items as this may cause dye to run.



Drip Dry

Selecting Drip Dry will pause the washer at the end of the rinse, allowing you to remove drip-dry garments before the washer goes into final spin. Your AquaSmart 2™ will beep and display a message to remind you to remove items. Once the items have been removed press START/PAUSE to begin the spin.



Soak

The Soak option provides a two hour soak during the middle of the wash phase. The machine will then complete the rest of the cycle. During Soak, the washer will agitate for a few seconds every minute. Once you enter the Soak option screen, use the SCROLL button to select Soak ON or OFF. Press SELECT to confirm your selection.

Note: once the Soak is underway, you can exit out at any time by pressing the BACK button.

Wash cycle progress

As the wash progresses the following symbols will be shown on the display screen to indicate the progression of the cycle.

	Filling		Eco		Sensing		Wash		Spray		Deep Rinse		Spin		Delay Start
	Active Wash		Water Level		Eco		Sensing		Wash		Spray		Deep Rinse		Spin

28 Lifestyle cycles

The Lifestyle cycles are presented in five distinct categories to help you to access them quickly and easily. The following pages explain the unique cycles that are located within these categories and how they might be of help.

Special Care

Some fabrics require extra special care. These wash treatments have been designed to take care of those special items.

Handwash

This is an extra gentle cycle for very delicate items. It has been designed for garments that you previously may have been reluctant to put into a clothes washer. HANDWASH uses a very gentle wash action, generous rinses and a slow spin. At the end of the rinse, the machine will pause and beep to remind you to remove any drip-dry items. Press START/PAUSE to resume the cycle and spin the remaining items.



Wool

Machine washable woollen garments have been specially treated so that they can be washed in a clothes washer. The WOOL cycle has been designed to cater for these types of items. It treats your woollens to a gentle wash and moderate spin to keep them looking their best. Remember to check the care label first and to use a wool detergent (follow the manufacturer's instructions regarding dosage).



Jeans

Jeans can be responsible for damaging other items in the wash. They require their own specific wash action to get clean and should be washed separately. That's why we have created a special cycle specifically for jeans. The cold wash temperature helps reduce loss of colour and the fast spin ensures that your jeans will dry quickly.



Hint: turn your jeans inside-out prior to washing to help maintain their appearance.

Lifestyle cycles 27


No experience necessary

Your AquaSmart 2™ washer offers you a range of special Lifestyle cycles, to make washing even easier. These cycles have been specifically designed by our washing experts, with you in mind. We have incorporated 70 years of washing knowledge into 19 easy to use, pre-programmed wash cycles. This allows you to let the washer deal with some of the more tricky washing situations you may encounter, ensuring that you get the same results as a washing expert, without having to be one.

Lifestyle cycles

Special Care	Handwash	Wool	Jeans			
Stains	Chocolate	Tomato	Blood	Grass	Fruit	Wine
Family	Duvet/Doona	Allergy	Hygiene	Nappy Rinse	Soft Toys	
Sport	Sweaty	Muddy	Sports Shoes	Beach Gear		
Clean Up	Clean Me					

To access Lifestyle cycles:

- 1 Scroll through the wash cycles on the display until you reach the LIFESTYLE option. 
- 2 Select LIFESTYLE, by touching the SELECT button, to the right of the screen.
- 3 Use the SCROLL buttons to scroll through the five LIFESTYLE categories.
- 4 Use the SELECT button to select a LIFESTYLE category.
- 5 Scroll through the cycles, touch SELECT confirm your cycle choice, and then press START.

30 Lifestyle cycles



Stains

We recommend that you treat a stain as soon as you can. There are a number of stains that need special treatment due to their unique composition. Some water temperatures can actually set stains rather than remove them. This is why we have carefully designed our STAINS cycles for you.

Chocolate

Chocolate is a complex stain with a mix of fats, proteins and sugars. Initially the stain is treated with a warm/hot wash that delivers the active ingredients of the detergent to the core of the stain. A soak is then used to activate the enzymes within the detergent to break down the proteins and fats and remove the last of the stain. A spray and deep rinse and fast spin remove any detergent residue.



Tomato

Research tells us that tomato-based sauce stains are some of the most common stains slopped on Australian and New Zealand clothes. This greasy stain can be quite hard to remove. An intermittent soaking procedure has been included to get the benefit of the enzymes within the detergent, with a spray and deep rinse and fast spin to finish.



Blood

Blood stains can set if subjected to warm water. This special cycle uses a cold Detergent Activating wash to deal to blood stains, followed by a warm agitate to remove any other soils. This cycle is finished with a spray and deep rinse and a fast spin.



Grass

Like other protein-based stains, eg blood, grass can set and become impossible to remove if subjected to warm water. This special cycle uses a combination of a cold Detergent Activating wash and warm agitate to remove grass stains. This cycle is finished with a spray and deep rinse and a fast spin.



Fruit

We recommend that you treat fruit stains with cold water as soon as they occur. This stains cycle has been designed to target fruit stains and finish off the stain removal process for you. The higher temperatures in the Eco Active™ wash will activate any colour-safe bleaches in your detergent, with a spray and deep rinse and fast spin to finish.



Wine

We recommend you try and treat wine stains with soda water or cold water as soon as they occur. This special cycle is designed to finish off the wash process for you. Some detergents contain colour-safe bleaches and would be ideal to be used with this wash. The increase in temperature will activate the bleach to target the stain. This cycle is finished with a spray and deep rinse and a fast spin.



30 Lifestyle cycles



Family

Some common household washing situations may require extra washing knowledge. We have created five unique FAMILY cycles to help you with those tricky situations.

Duvet/Doona

Duvets and doonas can be difficult items to wash as they are bulky and often float out of the water. This special cycle has a specially designed wash action with a double deep rinse to care for these bulky items. It is important to check care labels. Only wash duvets/doonas which are machine washable. We do not recommend washing products labelled 'dry clean only' in this machine.



Allergy

The ALLERGY cycle has been specifically designed for asthma sufferers and people with sensitive skin. A hot, concentrated Eco Active™ wash decimates dust mites and bugs, and the lengthy rinses and fast spin remove all dust mite waste and traces of detergent. This cycle is not recommended for garments prone to colour run.



Hygiene

When someone in your home is ill or has an infection, the way you wash can help to prevent re-infection or others becoming ill. Separate out infected washing and use slightly more detergent. The HYGIENE cycle incorporates a hot concentrated Eco Active™ wash and warm agitate to target bugs, and lengthy rinses to remove all detergent traces. We recommend drying these garments in direct sunlight, or using the hottest setting on your dryer that the fabric can handle. This cycle is not recommended for garments prone to colour run or shrinkage.



Nappy Rinse

The NAPPY RINSE cycle is great for rinsing nappy sanitisers from cloth nappies, prior to being washed. The nappies are slowly spun, then given two deep rinses, followed by an additional spray rinse, then a fast spin.



Soft Toys

This gentle cycle has been designed to take special care of the smallest family member's special friends. Soft toys are treated to a lukewarm gentle bath and then double deep rinse to ensure that detergent traces are removed from fur. For very special friends, we would suggest using a gentle, wool wash detergent.



Lifestyle cycles 31



Outdoor activities can create some unique washing challenges. We have created four helpful wash cycles to quickly deal with these situations.



Sweaty

The clothes you exercise in require a little extra care to remove the odours and dirt that tend to penetrate into the fabric structure. This cycle incorporates a warm/hot wash with a fast spin to thoroughly clean sweaty sports clothes.



Muddy

Clothes soiled with mud need to be washed in a special way, so that all traces can be removed. Mud requires a cold wash with lots of dilution. Cold water is the key, as washing in warm can set mud stains. This cycle uses a cold wash with extra rinses to help remove mud from clothing.



Sports Shoes

The SPORT SHOES cycle has been designed to freshen up sports shoes. This cycle uses a warm/cold, conventional wash with light agitation. A 30 minute soak helps to penetrate into the fabric structure to remove dirt. This is followed by a double deep rinse, and slow spin to finish off.



Beach Gear

Sand, grass and other bits can get into your wash after a day in the outdoors. The BEACH GEAR cycle helps to remove these impurities from the creases of your clothes, by using a cold wash with generous rinses. This cycle can also be useful for minimising the effects of any impurities that may be in your household water supply.



Clean up

Maintaining your AquaSmart 2™ in top condition will ensure that you receive the optimum wash each and every time.

Clean Me

We recommend that you use the CLEAN ME cycle to clean your AquaSmart 2™ washer 5 – 6 times a year. This will reduce the risk of Scrud (see page 12) or any other unpleasant build up forming on your wash bowl. The cycle uses a hot wash to clean the bowl and rinse out the fabric softener dispenser. This is followed by a two hour soak, then the cycle finishes with two deep rinses and a very short spin. After 100 cycles your machine will remind you to complete a CLEAN ME cycle. Prevention is better than cure so it's a good idea to complete a CLEAN ME cycle when prompted by the machine, or run the cycle 5 – 6 times a year.



- 1 Remove all items from the washer.
- 2 Add about 2 scoops of a good quality powdered detergent.
- 3 Select the CLEAN ME cycle, and press START.

Settings menu 32

After using your AquaSmart 2™ washer you may wish to fine-tune some of the options available to suit your individual needs. Any options changed in this menu will be a permanent change, unless RESET DEFAULTS is selected (refer to page 35).

To access the Settings menu:

- 1 Turn your AquaSmart 2™ washer on.
- 2 Scroll to the right through the wash cycles until you reach the Settings menu.
- 3 Press SELECT to enter the menu.



Temperature Adjust

The wash temperatures can be adjusted if you think they are too hot or too cold.

- Access the Settings menu (refer above).
- Scroll to the TEMPERATURE option, and press SELECT.
- Use the SCROLL button to move through the boxes to decrease or increase the wash temperature (the numbers in the boxes are in degrees). Each box is approximately equal to a 2°C change.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.



Adjust Heaviness

When HEAVY cycle is selected you may like to increase the rigorosity of the wash. This option is beneficial for those situations where a slightly rougher wash is needed to clean heavy duty, hardwearing, particularly soiled items (eg farm wear, work wear).

- Access the Settings menu (refer above)
- Scroll to the ADJUST HEAVINESS option, and press SELECT.
- Touch the right SCROLL button to increase to the desired roughness.
- The lowest setting is the default for the cycle, each bar to the right equates to a 2% increase in 'roughness'.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.



Aqua Plus

Activating this option adds additional water to the Aqua rinse in a High Efficiency wash cycle. This will give you a little extra rinsing for those with sensitive skin. You can also use this option if you tend to wash a lot of dark garments.

- Access the Settings menu (refer above).
- Scroll to the AQUA PLUS option, and press SELECT.
- Scroll to highlight either AQUA PLUS rinse ON or AQUA PLUS rinse OFF.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.

33 Settings menu



Balance Recovery

When your washer is spinning it can sense if the wash load is out of balance. It will stop and try to spin up to three times. If the machine still senses an unbalanced load, there are two options the machine can take:

1. Machine Stops

Your machine is automatically set to the Machine Stops option. When this option is on, your washer will give a short burst of beeps every five seconds to alert you. It will then ask you to redistribute the load before continuing the cycle.

Your machine defaults to this setting.

2. Automatic Recovery

Your washer will try to automatically correct the out of balance load. It will fill with water and 'agitate' to redistribute the load before trying to spin again.

To set Automatic Recovery:

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the BALANCE RECOVERY option, and press SELECT.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.



Alarm Beeps

The number of beeps that signal the end of the cycle can be altered. Choose between no beeps, five or fifteen beeps.

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the ALARM BEEPS option, and press SELECT.
- Use the SCROLL buttons to adjust the number of beeps.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.



Screen Brightness

You can adjust the brightness of your screen to suit your individual needs.

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the SCREEN BRIGHTNESS option, and press SELECT.
- Use the SCROLL buttons to increase or decrease the screen brightness.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.



Screen Contrast

You can adjust the contrast of your screen.

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the SCREEN CONTRAST option, and press SELECT.
- Use the SCROLL buttons to increase or decrease the screen contrast.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.

34 Settings menu



Keylock mode

Keylock automatically locks the buttons on your AquaSmart 2™ when not in use. This will avoid accidental button pushes from items left on the lid of the washer and also from any little fingers.

To turn Keylock mode ON or OFF:

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the KEYLOCK mode option, and press SELECT.
- Use the SCROLL buttons to select ON or OFF.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.

If Keylock mode is switched ON:

- To turn your washer on, **push and hold the POWER button for 3 seconds**. This will activate the display panel. You will then be able to select your wash options and press START. The buttons will then be locked.
- To PAUSE your washer at any time during the cycle, **press the PAUSE button twice**. This will allow you access to the Wash Options, then press START to restart your cycle. The buttons will then lock.
- To STOP your washer and power off, **press the POWER button twice**.
- If you can't remember how to unlock the buttons, press any button and the display screen will remind you.



Hints

Hints screens are provided to help to explain each of the wash choices. Your AquaSmart 2™ comes with these hints programmed ON. When you become more experienced with the way your machine functions, you may wish to turn these hints OFF.

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the HINTS option, and press SELECT.
- Use the SCROLL buttons to scroll to OFF.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection and return to the Settings menu.



Service Contacts

In the first instance please refer to 'Before You Call for Service' on pages 38 – 39 for help to try and solve any problem you may encounter. If your problem persists, this option will direct you to the appropriate contact details for help or service (or refer to page 45).

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the SERVICE CONTACTS option, and press SELECT.
- Use the SCROLL buttons to scroll through the information provided.
- Press CANCEL/BACK to return to the Settings menu.

35 Settings menu



Trouble Shooting

For help with some of the more common issues you may encounter:

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the TROUBLE SHOOTING option, and press SELECT.
- Use the SCROLL buttons to scroll through the information provided.
- Press CANCEL/BACK to return to the Settings menu.



Reset Defaults

If you would like to re-set all settings back to those that were set when your AquaSmart 2™ left the factory, select RESET FACTORY DEFAULTS.

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the RESET FACTORY DEFAULTS option, and press SELECT.
- Ensure that RESET is highlighted on the screen and then press SELECT. This will confirm your desire to return your washer back to the original factory settings, and the machine will be reset.

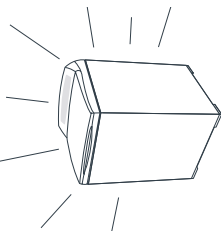


Replay Intro

This option allows you to replay the introduction explanation for your washer. This is great for a new user who may not be sure how to use their washer or what features the washer has to offer.

- Access the Settings menu (refer page 32).
- Scroll to the REPLAY INTRO option, and press SELECT.
- Press SELECT to confirm your selection.

36 Caring for your AquaSmart 2™ washer



When you have finished the cycle

- Turn off the taps to prevent the chance of flooding should a hose burst.
- Unplug the machine from the wall socket.

Cleaning your AquaSmart 2™

Before you start cleaning your AquaSmart 2™ washer, ensure that it is turned off at the wall (or that the Keylock mode has been activated).

Cleaning the soft touch buttons, screen and topdeck

Use a soft damp cloth to wipe all surfaces, and wipe dry. Avoid using chemical or scouring cleaners, as these will damage the paint and plastic surfaces of your washer.

You can also remove the lid for cleaning. Open the lid fully, grasp the lid on both sides. Lift in an upward motion, as shown. To replace the lid, hold the lid vertically and align both hinges before pushing downwards and slotting back into place.

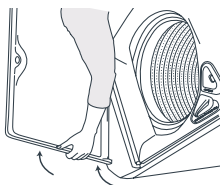


Fig.23 Removing the lid



Cleaning the detergent and fabric softener dispensers

Wipe out the detergent dispenser with a damp cloth. The funnel of the fabric softener dispenser (the top) clicks off easily. Simply place a finger down the centre and lift. The fabric softener well is not removable and needs to be wiped clean periodically. If the siphon tube looks partially blocked use a cotton bud to clean.

Fig.24 Removing the fabric softener funnel



Cleaning the inside of your washer

It is important that you occasionally clean the inside of your machine. Your AquaSmart 2™ has a bowl clean cycle specifically for this purpose. We recommend that you use the CLEAN ME cycle 5 – 6 times a year and suggest that you do not wash clothes during this cycle. Your washer will also show a reminder on screen to do this after every 100 cycles.

Cleaning steps

- 1 Add approximately 2 scoops of a good quality powdered detergent directly into the detergent dispenser.
- 2 Turn your machine on and scroll to LIFESTYLE cycles. Press SELECT.
- 3 Scroll to the CLEAN UP screen. Press SELECT.
- 4 Select CLEAN ME.

Caring for your AquaSmart 2™ washer 37

Cleaning your low-profile agitator

If your low-profile agitator becomes stained we recommend you use household bleach to clean it. Ensure you wear gloves, tip a small amount of household bleach onto a soft cloth and apply to the stain. Be careful to avoid metal surfaces of your machine. Leave it to soak in for 10 minutes and repeat. Then put your AquaSmart 2™ washer through the CLEAN ME cycle to remove any residual bleach (refer to page 36).

Automatic lint disposal system

With AquaSmart 2™ there is no need to remove messy lint filters. Your AquaSmart 2™ has a self cleaning lint disposal system. It automatically separates the lint from the wash water as it washes. The lint becomes trapped between the inner and outer bowls and is flushed out at the end of the wash.

Nappy sanitisers/bleach

Nappy sanitisers and bleach are very corrosive to metal surfaces. DO NOT use your AquaSmart 2™ to soak items in bleach or sanitiser, or tip the contents of the nappy bucket into your machine. Rinse and wring items out thoroughly before placing them in the machine. Wring out cloth nappies before using the NAPPY RINSE cycle (in LIFESTYLE cycles; FAMILY (refer to page 30)).

Before you call for service 38



Please read the following pages before you call for service.

You can correct many of your machine's problems yourself, using the checklists on the following pages.

Your AquaSmart 2™ is capable of diagnosing its own problems and if it has a problem it will beep and display a message telling you what is wrong.

If your AquaSmart 2™ beeps for help

A musical series of beeps every 5 seconds and...

The musical series of beeps is the same sound that your washer makes when you turn it on at the wall.

	"My load is OUT OF BALANCE" on screen
	Wash load is out of balance.
	Ensure the machine is stationary and manually redistribute the load. Check your machine is level (refer to 'Installation instructions', page 5).
	"I am not getting any WATER"
	Check that the taps have been turned on.
	Check that the inlet hose filters are not blocked.
	Check that the inlet hoses are not kinked or squashed.
	Check to see if the drain hose is too low or is pushed into the standpipe too far. This will cause the water to siphon out of the machine (refer to 'Installation instructions', page 3).
	"I am not getting any HOT WATER"
	Check that the hot water supply has been turned on.
	Your hot water supply may not be hot enough to maintain the selected water temperature.
	Select a lower wash temperature.
	Check that the inlet hose filter is not blocked.
	Check that the inlet hoses are not kinked or squashed.
	Check that the inlet hoses have been connected to the correct taps.
	The flow rate of the supply water may be too slow.

40 Solving operating problems

	"I am not getting any COLD WATER" Check that the cold water supply has been turned on. Your cold water temperature may exceed the recommended limits (refer to 'Installation instructions', page 4). Check that the inlet hose filter is not blocked. Check that the inlet hoses are not kinked or squashed. Check that the inlet hoses have been connected to the correct taps. The flow rate of the supply water may be too slow.
	"I am OVERLOADED" Your machine is overloaded and cannot continue the cycle. Ensure the machine is stationary and remove items until the remaining ones can move freely. Check that the machine is not siphoning (refer to 'Installation instructions', page 3).
	"I have TOO MANY SUDS" Your machine has a suds build-up. Too much detergent may have been used for the amount of soil in the load. Ensure that you are using a HE, Low Sudsing, Matic or Front Loader type detergent. Wait for suds to dissolve (about 20 minutes). Rinse clothing using the RINSE and SPIN cycle, or run through another cycle.
	"I can't LOCK THE LID" Check that the lid is closed. Press START/PAUSE. If the symptom persists, call your Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer.
	Single beep every second and ... "I need SERVICE" message and fault number 1 Turn your machine off at the wall. 2 Wait 1 minute and turn it back on. 3 Check your machine is level (refer to 'Installation instructions', page 5). 4 Remove load and retry. 5 Put through a RINSE and SPIN cycle (refer to page 17). 6 If the fault re-occurs repeat steps 1 and 2.

If the machine still will not work, call your Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer to arrange service (refer to page 45).

39 Before you call for service

	Pressing POWER does not turn on machine. Is the power switched on at the wall? Unplug from wall. Wait 60 seconds, plug back in, turn on and try again. Could household power supply be at fault? Try plugging in another appliance. Key/lock mode may be activated. Try holding down the POWER button for 3 seconds. Refer to page 34.
	Pressing START/PAUSE does not start the fill. Are both hot and cold taps turned on? Are the inlet hose filters blocked? Check ends of hose.
	FILLING continuously. Ensure drain hose is located in standpipe or tub. Ensure standpipe or tub is at least 850 mm high and no more than 2400 mm high. Make sure the machine is not siphoning (refer to 'Installation instructions', page 3).
	NOT SPINNING properly. Ensure load is not out of balance. Check machine is level and does not rock. Ensure machine does not have suds buildup.
	SPIN SPEED sounds slower than normal. Clothes are unevenly distributed in wash bowl, your machine has slowed the spin to compensate.
	WATER LEVEL low. Your machine is designed to automatically sense load size and minimise water use, therefore the water level may look different to your previous washer; this is normal.
	WASH WATER temperature is not warm. This unique wash system uses two wash phases. The second phase can be cooler than the first to minimise energy use. This is normal and will not affect wash performance.
	Too many SOAP SUDS. Ensure that you are using a Low Suds, Matic or HE detergent. Try using a little less detergent, especially if garments are only lightly soiled.
	SMALL PUDDLE of water coming from under machine. The detergent dispenser may be blocked (refer to page 12). Fabric softener dispenser may not be fitted correctly (refer to page 12). Machine may have been overloaded, causing splash from clothes as machine filled. Try reducing load size or select BULKY cycle for large, bulky items.

Solving operating problems 41

Wash CYCLE TIME longer than usual.

If water pressure is low, cycle time will increase due to longer fill times. Ensure that inlet hose filters are not blocked.

Your machine may have initiated Wash Recovery mode where it has sensed your load is washing unevenly. Ensure your machine is loaded evenly. Wash very heavy or very large items separately.

ADDING WATER in the middle of the wash/increased wash volume.

Your machine may have initiated Wash Recovery mode where it has sensed your load is washing unevenly. Ensure your machine is loaded evenly. Wash very heavy or very large items separately.

Small amount of WATER IN BOWL AT END OF CYCLE.

It is normal for a small amount of water to discharge from the fill nozzle after a wash.

Liquid remaining in FABRIC SOFTENER DISPENSER at end of cycle.

Check next time if you wish for Softener to be dispensed that SOFTENER ON is selected.

A small amount of water remaining in the dispenser at the end of the cycle is normal.

Try cleaning your fabric softener dispenser to remove any blockages.

If the dispenser is at MAX level at the completion of the cycle, check for and remove any blockages.

If problems persist, contact your Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer (refer to page 45).

Solving wash problems 42

CREASING.

Was the washer or dryer overloaded?

Selecting the EASY IRON cycle will minimise creasing.

Try not to leave wet clothes sitting in the washer or laundry basket.

LINTING.

Was the washer overloaded?

Wash lint givers, eg towels, separately from lint receivers, eg synthetics. Also wash similar colours together (eg lights with lights, darks with darks).

Have you used enough detergent?

Over drying clothes in the dryer can cause them to attract lint.

Try using a Conventional cycle (refer to page 8), or the softener rinse (refer to page 25).

POOR SOIL REMOVAL.

Are you using the most appropriate wash cycle for the amount of dirt?

Did you use enough detergent for the amount of dirt?

Was the washer overloaded?

Separate heavily and lightly soiled garments.

Use a wash temperature suitable for soil type, eg warm for greasy soils, cold for muddy soil.

DETERGENT RESIDUE.

Are you using the most appropriate wash cycle?

Did you use the recommended amount of liquid detergent?

Use the SOFTENER rinse (ie ensure the SOFTENER option is ON). Note: adding fabric softener to the dispenser is not needed in this instance.

Was the washer overloaded?

Is your cold water less than 20°C? Select Controlled Cold temperature option.

DYE TRANSFER.

Remember to separate whites and colours.

Wash non-colourfast items separately and select COLOURS cycle.

Remember to remove items from washer as soon as the wash is finished.

BLACK or GRAY MARKS on Clothes.

Are you using enough detergent for the amount of dirt?

Empty machine and put through a CLEAN ME cycle.

TANGLING.

Have you separated out larger items from smaller items?

Try using a Conventional cycle.

Try using the EASY IRON cycle to wash shirts.

Wash sheets on their own using the SHEETS cycle.

Try washing smaller load sizes.

If problems persist, please contact your Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer (refer to page 45).

43 Manufacturer's Warranty

You automatically receive a 2 year Manufacturer's Warranty with the purchase of this Product covering parts and labour for servicing within the country of purchase.

Fisher & Paykel undertakes to:

Repair or, at its option, replace without cost to the owner either for material or labour any part of the product, the serial number of which appears on the product, which is found to be defective within TWO YEARS of the date of purchase.

If your product qualifies, you also receive an additional EIGHT YEAR parts only warranty on your Direct Drive motor. This additional 8-year warranty commences on the day following the expiry of the 2-year Manufacturer's Warranty and excludes the Rotor Position Sensor, motor controller and labour. Fisher & Paykel will repair (as to parts) or, at its option, replace any Direct Drive motor (but not the rotor position sensor or motor controller) which is found to be defective within this additional warranty period. You will be responsible for any labour costs.

To see if your product qualifies for this additional warranty, refer to our website:
www.fisherpaykel.com/smartdrive

Note

These warranties are an extra benefit and do not affect your legal rights.

These warranties DO NOT cover

A Service calls which are not related to any defect in the product. The cost of a service call will be charged if the problem is not found to be a product fault. For example:

1. Correcting the installation, eg removal of bottom packer and transit bolts (front loading washers), levelling the machine, adjustment of the drain to correct siphoning, noises, crossed, kinked or leaking inlet hose connections, turning on water, noises caused by the waterhammer or power supplies.
2. Providing instruction on use of the product or changing the set-up of the product, eg instruction on correct use of detergents and fabric softeners.
3. Replacing fuses in, or correcting house wiring or correcting house plumbing, eg unblocking drains.
4. Correcting fault(s) caused by the user.
5. Noise or vibration that is considered normal, eg spin sounds, user warning beeps.
6. Correcting damage caused by pests, eg rats, cockroaches, etc.
7. Water on the floor due to incorrect loading or excessive suds.
8. Blocked pumps, removal of foreign objects/substances from the machine, including the pump and inlet hose filters, eg bra wires, bread tags, nails, grit, scrud, etc.
9. Correcting corrosion or discolouration due to chemical attack.

B Defects caused by factors other than:

1. Normal domestic use; or
2. Use in accordance with the product's user guide.

C Defects to the product caused by accident, neglect, misuse or 'act of God'.

D The cost of repairs carried out by non-authorised repairers or the cost of correcting such unauthorised repairs.

44 Manufacturer's Warranty

E Normal recommended maintenance as set out in the product's user guide.

F Repairs when the appliance has been dismantled, repaired or serviced by other than a Fisher & Paykel authorised repairer or the selling dealer.

G Pick-up and delivery.

H Transportation or travelling costs involved in the repair when the product is installed outside the Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer's normal service area.

This product has been designed for use in a normal domestic (residential) environment. This product is not designed for commercial use (whatsoever). Any commercial use by a customer will affect this product's warranty.

Service under these warranties must be provided by a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer (refer to the 'Customer Care' section at the back of this book). Such service shall be provided during normal business hours. This warranty certificate should be shown when making any claim.

For Australian Customers

This Warranty is an extra benefit and does not affect your legal rights. Our goods come with guarantees that cannot be excluded under the Australian Consumer Law. You are entitled to a replacement or refund for a major failure and for compensation for any other reasonably foreseeable loss or damage. You are also entitled to have the goods repaired or replaced if the goods fail to be of acceptable quality and the failure does not amount to a major failure.

Please keep this user guide in a safe place.



Before you call for service or assistance...

Check the things you can do yourself.
Refer to your User Guide and check:

- 1 Your appliance is correctly installed.
- 2 You are familiar with its normal operation.
- 3 You have read the problem solving at the back of the book.

If after checking these points you still need assistance, please refer to your nearest Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer, or contact us through our local website listed on the back cover.

In New Zealand if you need assistance..*

Call your Fisher & Paykel retailer who is trained to provide information on your appliance, or if we can be of any further help, please contact our Customer Care Centre,
Toll Free: 0800 FP CARE or 0800 37 2273 **Fax:** (09) 273 0656
Email: customer.care@fp.co.nz **Postal address:** PO Box 58732, Botany, Manukau 2163

If you need service..*

Fisher & Paykel has a network of independent Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairers whose fully trained technicians can carry out any service necessary on your appliance. Your dealer or our Customer Care Centre can recommend a Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer in your area.

In Australia if you need assistance..*

Call the Fisher & Paykel Customer Care Centre and talk to one of our Customer Care Consultants.
Toll Free: 1 300 650 590 **Fax:** (07) 3826 9298
Email: customer.care@fp.com.au **Postal Address:** PO Box 798, Cleveland QLD 4163

If you need service..*

Fisher & Paykel has a network of qualified Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairers responsible for servicing only Fisher & Paykel branded appliances. Our Customer Care Centre can recommend a qualified Fisher & Paykel Authorised Repairer in your area.

*If you call, write or contact our website please provide: your name and address, model number, serial number, date of purchase and a complete description of the problem. This information is needed in order to better respond to your request for assistance.

Product details can be found on the top left hand side of the console or back panel of the washer cabinet.

Product details

Fisher & Paykel Appliances, Ltd

Model/Serial No.

Date of Purchase _____ Purchaser _____
Dealer _____ Suburb _____
Town _____ Country _____

www.fisherpaykel.co.nz
www.fisherpaykel.com.au

Fisher & Paykel

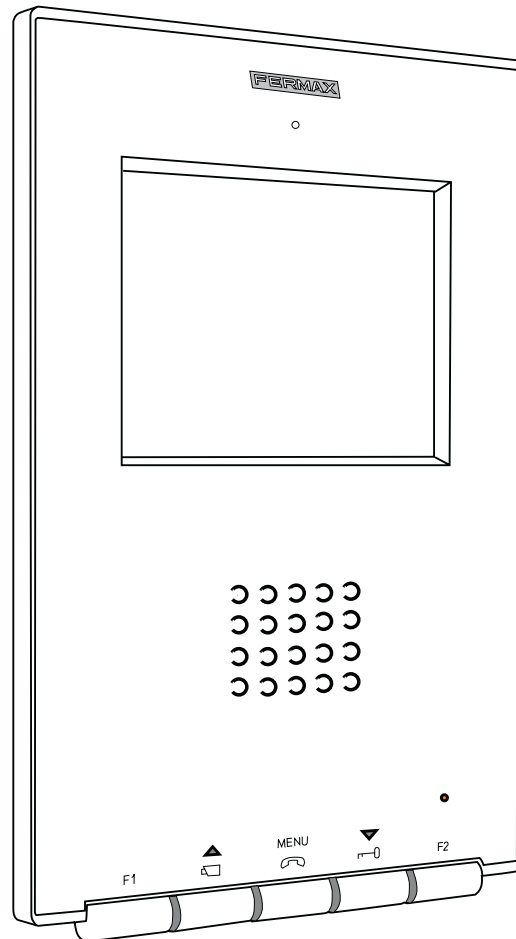
Copyright © Fisher & Paykel 2011. All rights reserved.
The product specifications in this booklet apply to the specific products and models described at the date of issue. Under our policy of continuous product improvement, these specifications may change at any time. You should therefore check with your Dealer to ensure this booklet correctly describes the product currently available.

F&P PN - 424282

08.2011

NZ AU

FERMAX



- E** MONITOR iLOFT
- EN** iLOFT MONITOR
- F** MONITEUR iLOFT
- D** iLOFT MONITOR
- P** MONITOR iLOFT

ADS System

E ¡ENHORABUENA POR DISPONER DE UN PRODUCTO DE CALIDAD!

Fermax electrónica desarrolla y fabrica equipos de prestigio que cumplen los más altos estándares de diseño y tecnología.

Su monitor de videoportero FERMAX le permitirá comunicarse con la placa de calle, ver la persona que le está llamando y abrirle la puerta de entrada si así lo desea. Esperamos disfrute de sus funcionalidades.

www.fermax.com

EN CONGRATULATIONS ON PURCHASING THIS QUALITY PRODUCT!

Fermax Electronics develops and manufactures reputable equipment which fulfils the highest design and technology standards.

Your FERMAX video door entry system allows you to communicate with the entry panel, to see who is calling and to open the door if you wish.

We hope you enjoy its range of functions.

www.fermax.com

F FÉLICITATIONS ! VOUS VENEZ D'ACQUÉRIR UN VÉRITABLE PRODUIT DE QUALITÉ!

Fermax Electronica développe et fabrique des équipements de prestige qui répondent aux normes de design et technologie les plus développées.

Votre moniteur pour portier vidéo FERMAX vous permettra de communiquer avec la platine de rue, de voir la personne qui vous appelle et d'ouvrir la porte d'entrée si vous le souhaitez.

Nous espérons que vous profiterez pleinement de toutes ses fonctions.

www.fermax.com

D WIR GRATULIEREN IHNEN ZUM KAUF DIESES QUALITÄTSPRODUKTS!

Fermax Electronica entwickelt und fabriziert hochwertige Anlagen, die den höchsten Technologie- und Designstandards entsprechen.

Der Monitor der Videotürsprechanlage von FERMAX ermöglicht Ihnen eine Sprechverbindung mit der Türstation herzustellen, die Person, mit der Sie sprechen auf dem Bildschirm zu betrachten und bei Bedarf die Tür zu öffnen.

Überzeugende Funktionalität für Ihr Eigenheim!

www.fermax.com

P PARABÉNS POR DISPOR DE UM PRODUTO DE QUALIDADE!

Fermax electrónica desenvolve e fabrica equipas de prestigio que cumprem com os mais altos padrões de desenho e tecnologia.

O seu monitor de vídeo-porteiro FERMAX lhe permitirá comunicar-se com a placa da rua, ver a pessoa que lhe está a chamar e abrir-lhe a porta de entrada se assim o desejar.

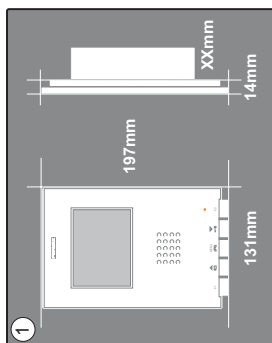
Esperamos que aproveites as suas funcionalidades.

www.fermax.com

INDICE - INDEX **SOMMAIRE - INHALT - INDICE**

E MONITOR iLOFT	6
Instalación Monitor	6
Conexiónado	7
Características Técnicas	8
Programación del monitor	10
Funcionamiento	12
Ajustes del monitor	12
Mantenimiento (limpieza)	46
EN MONITOR iLOFT	14
Installing the Monitor	14
Wiring	15
Technical Characteristics	15
Programming the monitor	16
Operation	18
Monitor settings	20
Maintenance (cleaning)	46
F MONITEUR iLOFT	22
Installation moniteur	22
Connexions	23
Caractéristiques techniques	23
Programmation du moniteur	24
Fonctionnement	26
Réglages du moniteur	28
Maintenance (nettoyage)	46
D iLOFT MONITOR	30
Installation des Monitors	30
Verkabelung	31
Technische Eigenschaften	31
Programmierung des Monitors	32
Funktionsweise	34
Monitoreinstellungen	36
Wartung (Reinigung)	46
P MONITOR iLOFT	38
Instalação do Monitor	38
Ligações	39
Características Técnicas	39
Programação do monitor	40
Funcionamento	42
Ajustes do monitor	44
Manutenção (limpeza)	46

iLOFT Monitor INSTALLING THE MONITOR



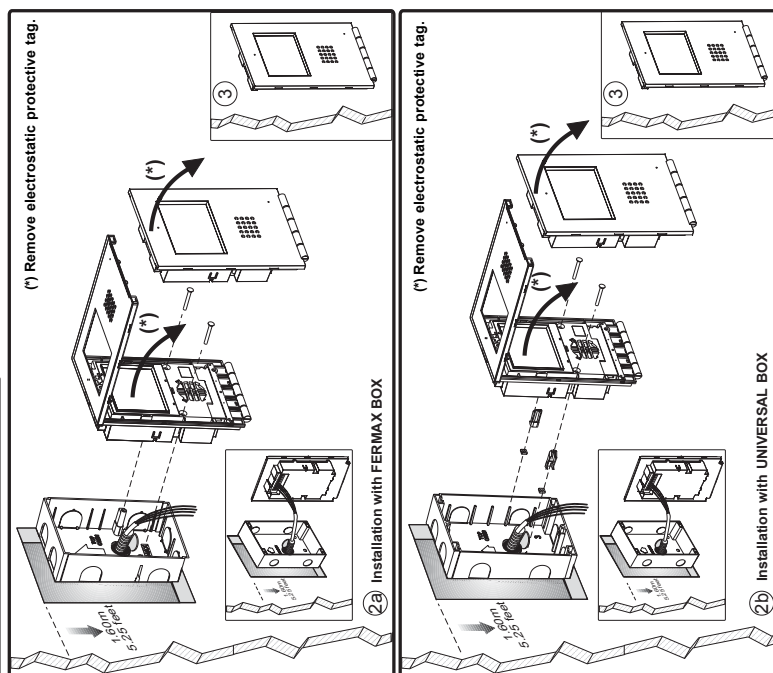
Dimensions of monitor (Height x Width x Depth*):
197 x 131 x 60 mm / 7.7" x 5.1" x 2.3"

Dimensions of Ferman box (Height x Width x Depth):
158 x 108 x 45 mm / 6.2" x 4.2" x 1.7"

Dimensions of universal box (Height x Width x Depth):
174 x 114 x 50 mm / 6.8" x 4.5" x 2"

Notes:

- this monitor can be installed in a universal box
- Depth *: the Monitor depth given here is with Ferman box



Pag 14

iLOFT Monitor Wiring

- Video terminals (coaxial):

V: live

M: shield

Ct: camera activation (10 Vdc)

- Connection Terminals:

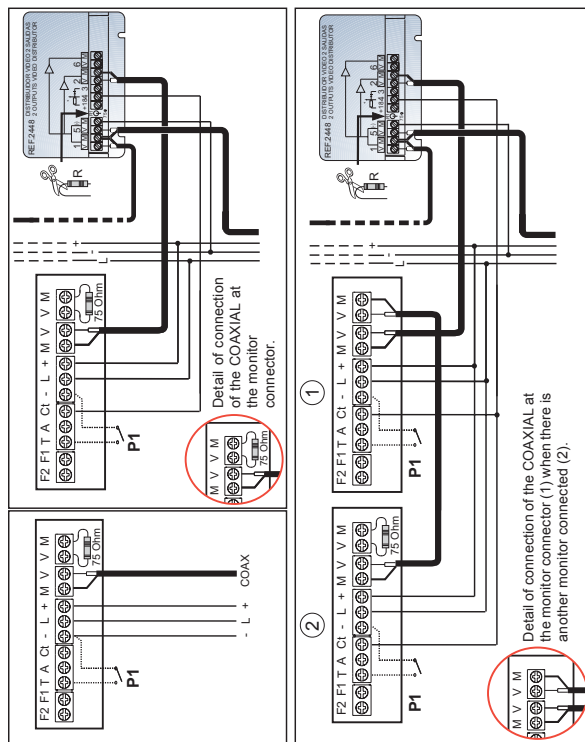
+, -: 18 Vdc power supply).

L: data bus.

F1, F2: additional functions (negative output «-»).

T-: Call Button Connection for Door of Residence (P1).

A, +: Call extension connection ref. 2040, light and bell activator ref. 2438, etc...



TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Power Supply	18 Vdc
Consumption on standby	15 mA
making a call	300 mA
with video	250 mA
with audio and video	400 mA
Operating temperature	[5, +40 °C] [41, +104 °F]
Humidity	[0 - 90%]
TFT	Flat Screen, 3.5" Diagonal
Resolution:	Horizontal: 480 Line TV - Vertical: 234 Line TV
Video signal:	Compound signal 1 Vpp 75 Ω, 7 Mhz
Dimensions of monitor (Height x Width x Depth*):	197 x 131 x 60 mm / 7.7" x 5.1" x 2.3"

Pag 15

iLOFT Monitor FERMEX

The monitor will not function until it has been programmed!




Option 1: From Panel + Monitor

1. With the monitor connected, press the programming button «PROG—» for 2 seconds (to access this, you must lift up the front cover). A confirmation tone will be emitted.
2. Press the call-to-residence button. A different confirmation tone will once again sound, and the programmed number will be shown on the DISPLAY (for 2 seconds).

Option 2: From the Monitor

1. Go into configuration mode: Press the button MENU for two seconds. The LED blinks once each second and a confirmation tone is emitted.
2. Put the monitor into programming mode: With the monitor connected, press the programming button «PROG—» for 1 second (to access this, you must lift up the front cover). A confirmation tone will be emitted.
The first thing the monitor then does is indicate the number of the current monitor on the DISPLAY. If it is not programmed, it will show the following: - - -

3. Programme the call number: Each time the button corresponding to hundredths, tenths or units is pressed, the figure goes up by one and is shown on the DISPLAY.

Hundredths: Press the button  (SW2)
Tenths: Press the button  (SW3)
Units: Press the button  (SW4)

Once you reach 9, if you press again, it returns to 0 and a low error tone is emitted. The next time you press, it will go to 1.

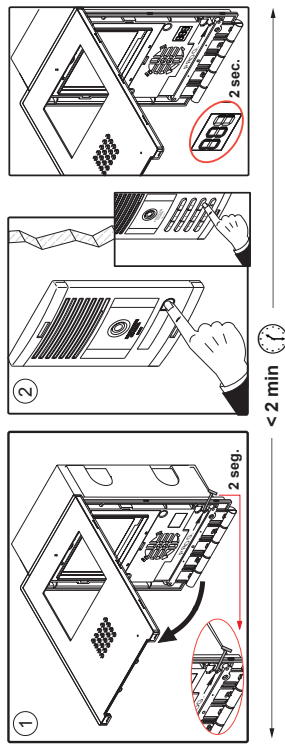
4. Exit programming mode: Press the programming button «PROG—» for 2 seconds, or wait 30 seconds before pressing any button.
When you exit programming mode, the number indicated is stored. If it is correct (between 1 and 199), a confirmation tone is emitted; if it is not correct, an error tone is emitted, and the «Err» message is shown on the DISPLAY.

Pag 17

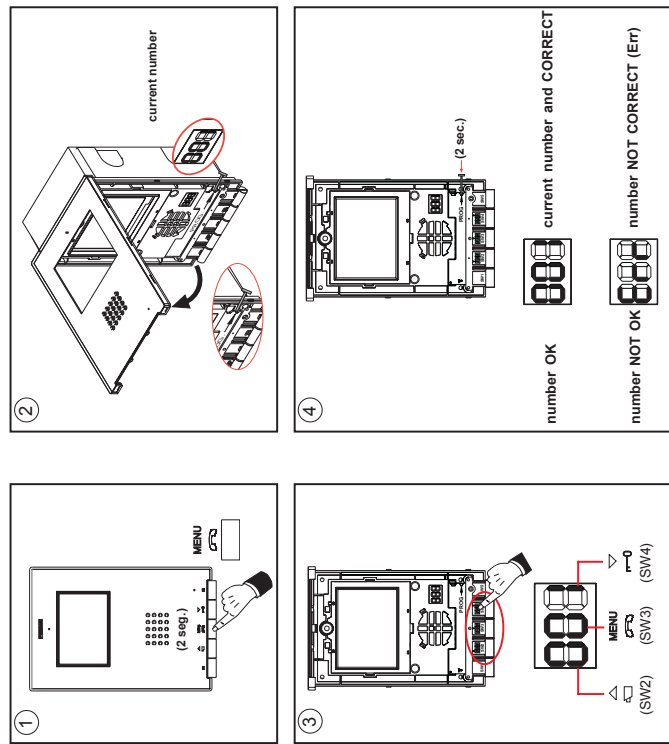
iLOFT Monitor FERMEX

PROGRAMMING THE iLOFT MONITOR

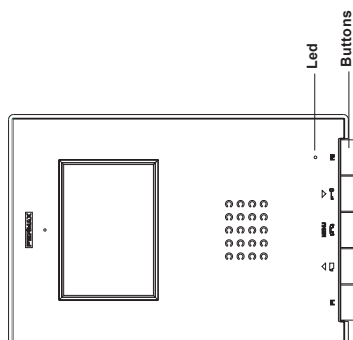
Option 1: From Panel + Monitor



Option 2: From the Monitor



Pag 16



Buttons

- Audio Activation, Hanging-up and Configuration-adjustment Button (menu).**
- When a call is received, press this button to speak to the visitor. The audio channel between the street and the home is opened; operation is in hands-free mode.
 - Press to end the communication.
 - With the monitor on standby, press this button for 2 seconds to go into monitor configuration mode. See the «Monitor Settings» section.
- Door-opener / call to reception button.**
- When you are in conversation with the Street Panel, pressing this button will activate the door-opener.
 - With the monitor on standby, when you press this button a call will be made to reception (if there is one).
- Auto-start / Main-Secondary Camera Selection Button.**
- With the monitor on standby, press this button for 1 second to switch the monitor on manually. To activate the audio, press the button.
 - With video, hold this button down for 2 seconds to sequentially select between the main camera and the secondary camera (if there is one).

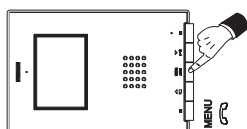
F1 F1 and F2: Buttons for Additional Functions (assigned by the installer).

NOTE: The monitor screen goes on once the call from the panel has ended.

Pag 18

iLOFT Monitor

Operation



Answering a call

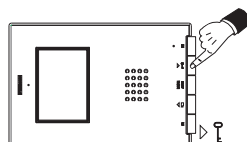
When the call button on the **Street Panel** is pressed a call tone is emitted both at the panel and on the monitor, and the screen goes on.

Press the button **MENU** to speak with the visitor. The audio channel between the street and the home will be opened; **operation is in hands-free mode**. The communication will automatically end after 90 seconds, or at any time by pressing the button **MENU**. The LED will remain on (blue) while the conversation lasts.

If communication is not established with the street panel, the monitor will automatically go off after 30 seconds.

Opening the door

When a call is received from the street panel, it is possible to open the door at any time, by pressing the button.

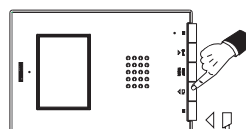


Manual Activation of the Monitor (Auto-start)

With the monitor on standby, press this button for 1 second to switch the monitor on manually. To sequentially select between the main camera and the secondary camera (if there is one), hold the button for 2 seconds.

To activate the audio and speak to the visitor or open the door, carry out the steps described above.

If communication is not established with the street panel, the monitor will automatically go off after 30 seconds.



NOTE: If there is more than one iLOft monitor in the system and a call is made to a monitor, the rest of the monitors will show a blue led warning that the channel is busy.

Pag 19

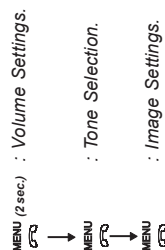
iLOFT Monitor Monitor settings

FERMAX

To access **configuration mode**, press the button **MENU** down for two seconds (the led will blink once a second and a confirmation tone will be emitted).

On accessing configuration mode, the monitor will go into **volume settings mode**.

Press the button **MENU** to move through the configuration options in order:



To adjust the different configuration options, while in the required option, follow these steps:

Set Call Bell Volume

- press the button to select a **high volume** or
- press the button to select a **low volume**.

Call Tone and Call Cancellation (do not disturb mode)

- press the button to select the call tone. You will go through all the brightness-contrast configurations it incorporates.
 - press the button to activate the call cancellation function (do not disturb mode);
- The monitor led blinks on red to indicate «do not disturb» mode

To reactivate call functions, press the button .

Image Settings (Brightness-Contrast and Colour)

In **image configuration mode**, the led blinks once every two seconds, indicating that the monitor is in this mode.

The monitor has 4 pre-established settings with a specific level of brightness and contrast and 4 colour levels.

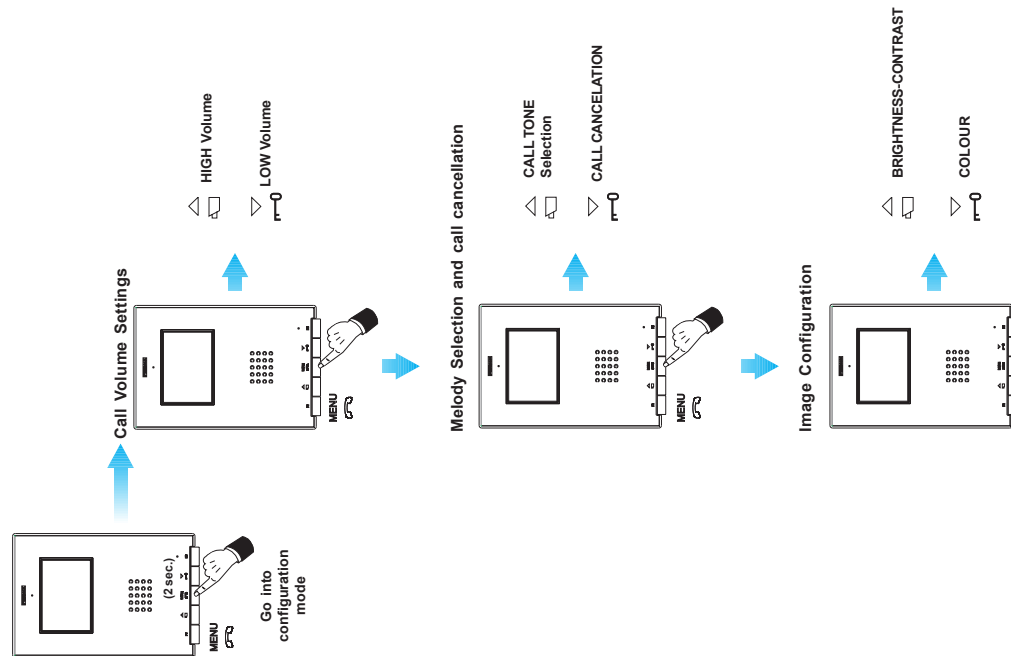
On pressing the corresponding button you can select the brightness/contrast level or colour setting.

When you come to the last option, an error tone is emitted and it returns to the first one.

- press the button to select brightness and contrast.
- press the button to configure colour.

iLOFT Monitor iLoft Monitor Settings - Quick Guide

FERMAX





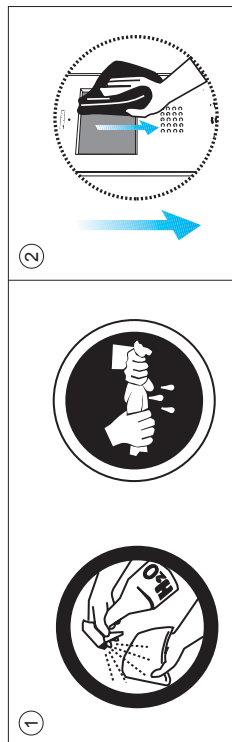
E No utilizar productos de limpieza que contengan ácidos, vinagre o que sean abrasivos.

EN Do not use cleaning products which contain acids, vinegar or are abrasive in nature.

F Ne pas utiliser de produits nettoyants contenant de l'acide, du vinaigre ou d'autres substances abrasives.

D Verwenden Sie niemals saurehaltige oder scheuernde Reinigungsmittel.

P Não utilizar produtos de limpeza que contenham ácidos, vinagre, ou que sejam abrasivos.



E 1º. Utilizar trapo húmedo.

2º. Páselo sobre el monitor siempre en la misma dirección.
Después de limpiar el monitor séquelo cuidadosamente para eliminar la humedad.

EN 1º. Use a damp cloth.

2º. Wipe it over the monitor always following the same direction.
After cleaning the monitor dry it carefully to avoid moisture damage.

F 1º. Utiliser un chiffon humide.

2º. Le passer sur le moniteur toujours dans le même sens.
Après avoir nettoyé le moniteur, le sécher soigneusement afin d'éliminer l'humidité.

D 1º. Benutzen Sie ein feuchtes Reinigungstuch.

2º. Fahren Sie immer in gleicher Richtung über den Monitor.
Nach der Monitorreinigung diesen vorsichtig trocken reiben.

P 1º. Utilizar um pano húmido.

2º. Passe-o no monitor sempre na mesma direcção.
Após limpar o monitor, seque-o cuidadosamente, para eliminar a humidade.

E Publicación técnica de carácter informativo editada por FERMAX ELECTRONICA S.A.E.

FERMAX ELECTRONICA S.A.E., en su política de mejora constante, se reserva el derecho a modificar el contenido de este documento así como las características de los productos que en él se refieren en cualquier momento y sin previo aviso.

Cualquier modificación será reflejada en posteriores ediciones de este documento.

EN Technical document published for information purposes by FERMAX ELECTRONICA S.A.E.

FERMAX ELECTRONICA S.A.E., in a policy of ongoing improvement, reserves the right to modify the contents of this document and the features of the products referred to herein at any time and with no prior notice. Any such modifications shall be reflected in subsequent editions of this document.

F Publication technique à caractère informatif éditée par FERMAX ELECTRONICA S.A.E.

Conformément à sa politique de perfectionnement continu, FERMAX ELECTRONICA, S.A.E. se réserve le droit de modifier, à tout moment et sans préavis, le contenu de ce document ainsi que les caractéristiques des produits auxquels il fait référence. Toutes les modifications seront indiquées dans les éditions suivantes.

D Technische Veröffentlichung zu Informationszwecken; Herausgeber: FERMAX ELECTRONICA S.A.E.

FERMAX ELECTRONICA S.A.E. behält sich das Recht vor, den Inhalt dieses Dokuments sowie die technischen Eigenschaften der erwähnten Produkte ohne vorherige Ankündigung zu ändern, um dadurch den ständigen Weiterentwicklungen und den damit in Verbindung stehenden Verbesserungen Rechnung zu tragen. Alle Änderungen finden Aufnahme in den Neuauflagen dieses Dokuments.

P Publicação técnica de carácter informativo editada por FERMAX ELECTRONICA S.A.E.A FERMAX

ELECTRONICA S.A.E., na sua política de melhoramento constante, reserva-se o direito de modificar o conteúdo deste documento assim como as características dos produtos que nele são referidos a qualquer momento e sem aviso prévio.

Qualquer modificação será apresentada em edições posteriores deste documento.